

spark® 星火英语

Spark

总主编/马德高

风靡全国 ◆ 畅销十年 ◆ 8000万读者的选择

初中英语

互动新课堂

Interactive

主编/马德高

审读/【美】Ryne Weaver



英汉对照 图文互动

七年级 下册

配人教新目标教材

天津科学技术出版社

spark® 星火英语

spark

总主编/马德高

风靡全国 ◆ 畅销十年 ◆ 8000万读者的选择

初中英语

互动

主 编/马德高

副主编/王孟亮 冯 琦

新课堂

Interactive

配人教新目标教材

七年级 下册

天津科学技术出版社

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

初中英语互动新课堂：人教新目标 / 马德高主编. —天津：天津科学技术出版社，2008.9 (2009.12 重印)

ISBN 978-7-5308-4808-1

I. 初… II. 马… III. 英语课—初中—教学参考资料
IV. G634.413

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2008)第 145360 号

责任编辑：杨庆华

责任印制：王莹

天津科学技术出版社出版

出版人：胡振泰

天津市西康路 35 号 邮编 300051

电话 (022)23332398 23332393

网址：www.tjkjcs.com.cn

新华书店经销

莒南县文源印务有限公司印刷

开本 880×1230 1/16 印张 30 字数 1 300 000

2009 年 12 月第 1 版第 2 次印刷

定价：43.40 元(全套三册)

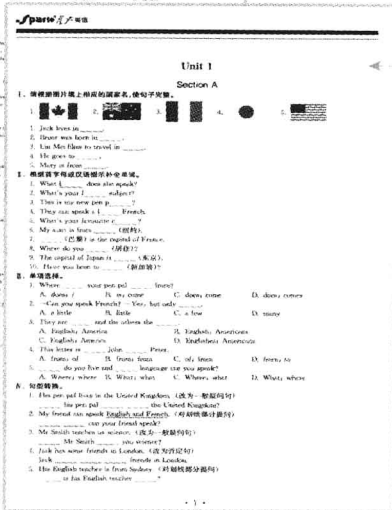


因您而变, 因“试”而变



5 单元同步测试

新课程标准的实施, 使新题型不断出现。我们因“试”而变, 组织一线教师严格按照新课程标准、并参考各地考试说明编写了贴近中考、难度适中的单元同步测试, 其中穿插了大量新题型, 从而满足各地考生的需求。



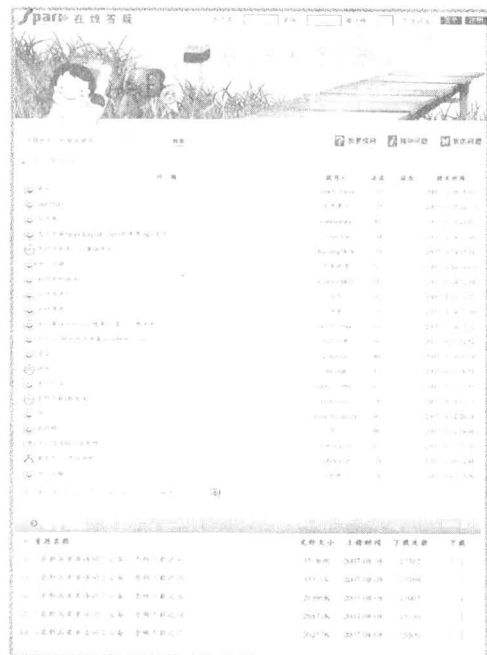
6 课时达标卷

本书在赠品里加入课时达标卷, 编写时紧扣教材, 注重基础, 适度提高。内容上知识点全面, 重、难点突出, 题目新颖灵活; 在课时划分上力求与实际教学同步; 在形式上方便教师使用。



网络互动, 在线学习

为了帮助您解决学习过程中遇到的各类疑难问题, 我们特聘数名一线教师在星火网站(<http://www.sparke.cn>)与学生互动, 随时解答学生遇到的各类问题; 同时, 为了满足学生进一步提升自己能力的需求, 我们在网站上特设了内容丰富的学习资源下载中心, 免费提供下载, 为您提供学习的全面解决方案。



Foreword 前言

近年来,随着中学英语新课标的实施、教育制度和考试制度改革的推进,以及素质教育的深化,如何让学生在学好教材的基础上活学活用,拓展视野,提高综合语言运用能力,成为广大师生最迫切渴望解决的问题。在此形势下,一种全新的、活泼的、能够充分调动学生自主性探究学习的创新教学方法——互动式英语教学法应运而生!

互动式英语教学是当前最具生命力、最具科学性的一种创新教学方法,是当前中学生学好英语、用好英语最有效、最实用的教学模式。互动式教学,通过师生之间教与学的互动、讲与练的互动、读与写的互动、探与思的互动,为英语学习者营造出一个鲜活、灵动、创新、个性的全新学习环境。

为了将这种科学、创新的教学方法运用到同学们平时的学习中,为大家创造一个自主探究的学习环境和学习氛围,帮助大家学好教材、用好教材、悟透知识、提高技能,为整个英语综合运用能力的提升打下良好的基础,我们组织几十位一线中学英语特、高级教师和对互动式英语教学有着深层研究与实践的专家、学者,共同编写了这套与中学英语各版本教材配套使用的《互动新课堂》同步辅导系列丛书。

本书在内容编写和学习使用中,充分体现了五大特色:

英汉对照 分栏讲解

本书在体例设计和编排上充分考虑了使用时的方便性和实用性,将课文内容逐一翻译,英汉上下对照;当页生词放在文章的下方,便于查阅;同时,将讲解与课文分栏编排,左右对照,当页问题当页解决。

启发设问 探究学习

为体现新课标探究式学习的精神,充分调动学生自主探究学习的积极性和主动性,本书特别注重启发式讲解,通过启发设问、互动探究来引导学生进行思考,自主解决学习中遇到的问题,充分调动学生学习的积极性和主动性,提高学生的自主学习能力,从而达到互动探究的目的。

词汇助记 方法第一

本书对重点词汇的讲解,不但利用生动形象的图片等帮助学生快速掌握课本词汇,而且“授之以渔”,将各种记忆单词的方法糅和在其中,通过点拨词与词之间的联系,由点到面适当扩充,逐步扩大学生的词汇量,帮助学生轻松实现快捷高效的记忆。

非常点拨 趣味拓展

本书特设非常点拨栏目,对本页中出现的知识点采用图文并茂的形式或巧记,或妙辨,或总结。趣味的讲解、活泼的形式,帮助学生寓学于乐,在一种轻松、主动的意境中发散思维、拓展知识。

网络互动 在线学习

为了方便学生学习,我们特别开通了星火英语互动教学网站(www.sparke.cn),充分利用网上优势,提供了大量学习资源供读者免费下载。同时还设置了“网上答疑”栏目,方便学生在使用本书遇到问题时与我们的在线名师或其他读者交流,从而达到“一书在手,全程指导”的目的。

本书附赠课时达标卷及其答案、单元同步测试答案等精彩内容,真正物超所值。

知识创造财富,学习改变未来。

来信请寄:(250101)山东省济南市高新技术开发区舜华路 2000 号舜泰广场 8 号楼 15 层
星火初中读者服务部(收)

来电请拨:(0531)55582340 网址:www.sparke.cn

电子信箱:spark_dz@126.com

有我相伴,
英语学习轻松OK!

Contents 目录



UNIT 1 Where's your pen pal from?

Section A	1
Section B	3
Self Check	5
语法在线	6
单元同步测试	7

UNIT 2 Where's the post office?

Section A	9
Section B	12
Self Check	14
语法在线	16
单元同步测试	17



UNIT 3 Why do you like koalas?

Section A	19
Section B	22
Self Check	24
语法在线	25
单元同步测试	26

UNIT 4 I want to be an actor.

Section A	29
Section B	32
Self Check	35
语法在线	36
单元同步测试	37

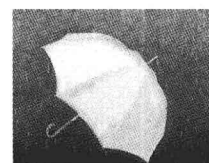


UNIT 5 I'm watching TV.

Section A	39
Section B	41
Self Check	43
语法在线	44
单元同步测试	45

UNIT 6 It's raining!

Section A	47
Section B	50
Self Check	53
语法在线	53
单元同步测试	54
期中测试题	56





UNIT 7 What does he look like?

Section A	58
Section B	62
Self Check	64
语法在线	65
单元同步测试	66

UNIT 8 I'd like some noodles.

Section A	68
Section B	71
Self Check	73
语法在线	74
单元同步测试	75



UNIT 9 How was your weekend?

Section A	77
Section B	80
Self Check	82
语法在线	84
单元同步测试	85

UNIT 10 Where did you go on vacation?

Section A	87
Section B	90
Self Check	92
语法在线	93
单元同步测试	94

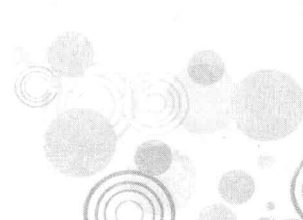


UNIT 11 What do you think of game shows?

Section A	96
Section B	100
Self Check	101
语法在线	102
单元同步测试	103

UNIT 12 Don't eat in class.

Section A	105
Section B	107
Self Check	109
语法在线	110
单元同步测试	111
期末测试题	113



非常点拨索引

UNIT 1 Where's your pen pal from?

- 巧学助记:特殊疑问句用法歌诀..... (1) 词汇绿卡:language (3)
真题回放:考查 be from 的用法 (1) 词汇绿卡:Japanese (3)
图解助记:country 的一词多义 (2) 妙辨异同:little/a little,few/a few (4)
一言辨异:live,stay (2) 真题回放:考查 little,a little (4)

UNIT 2 Where's the post office?

- 归纳拓展:名词作定语..... (9) 图解助记:open,close (13)
一言辨异:pay 的一词多义 (9) 真题回放:考查交际用语 You are welcome. (13)
图解助记:near,far (10) 一言辨异:through,across,over (14)
真题回放:考查 above,across,through,over (10) 图解辨异:through,across,over (14)
一言辨异:in the front of,in front of (11) 真题回放:考查 be+doing 表将来 (15)
图解辨异:between,among (11) 妙辨异同:arrive at,arrive in (15)
图解助记:down 的一词多义 (12) 真题回放:考查 There be 句型 (16)
图解助记:right 的一词多义 (12) 真题回放:考查 arrive,get,reach 的用法 (16)

UNIT 3 Why do you like koalas?

- 妙辨异同:Let's,Let us (19) 一言辨异:sleep,go to bed,go to sleep (23)
图解辨异:Let's,Let us (19) 一言辨异:during,for (23)
巧学助记:巧记 box 的一词多义 (20) 归类卡片:“肉”之种种 (24)
妙辨异同:kind of,a kind of (20) 妙辨异同:relaxing,relaxed (24)
归纳拓展:名词+ly 构成的形容词 (22) 真题回放:考查特殊疑问词 why 的用法 (25)
妙辨异同:other,others (22) 真题回放:考查特殊疑问词 why 的用法 (25)

UNIT 4 I want to be an actor.

- 一言辨异:shop 的一词多义 (29) 图解助记:hard 的一词多义 (33)
图解助记:doctor 的一词多义 (29) 一言辨异:job,work (33)
真题回放:考查主谓一致 (30) 巧学助记:巧记 's 和 of 所有格 (34)
真题回放:考查提问职业 what do you do (30) 巧学助记:巧记四季 (34)
图解助记:wear 的一词多义 (31) 巧学助记:名词单数变复数口诀 (35)
妙辨异同:sometimes 的形近词(组) (31) 巧学助记:接双宾语并可变为加 to 形式的动词 (35)
真题回放:考查 be busy doing,forget to do (32) 归纳拓展:各种尊称 (36)
妙辨异同:in hospital,in a/the hospital (32) 真题回放:考查询问职业的句型 (36)

UNIT 5 I'm watching TV.

- 图解辨异:clean,clear (39) 妙辨异同:activity,act,action (41)
归纳拓展:动词原形、过去式、过去分词同形 (39) 巧学助记:现在进行时用法口诀 (44)
图解助记:“等公共汽车” (41) 巧学助记:现在分词构成口诀 (44)

UNIT 6 It's raining!

- 巧学助记:巧记 rain 的一词多义 (47) 图解助记:“冷暖变化” (50)
归纳拓展:形容词后缀-y (47) 一言辨异:lie 的一词多义 (51)
图解助记:cook,cooker (48) 图解助记:各种“看” (51)
图解助记:play 的一词多义 (48) 一言辨异:surprised,surprising (52)
图解助记:study,learn (49) 一言辨异:everyone,every one (52)
一言辨异:pretty 的一词多义 (49) 真题回放:考查提问方式的特殊疑问句 (53)
图解助记:cold 的一词多义 (50) 真题回放:考查 can 引导的一般疑问句的回答 (53)

UNIT 7 What does he look like?

图解助记:“各种发型”	(58)	巧学助记:good-looking, pretty, beautiful	(61)
图解辨析:tall, high	(58)	一言辨异:stop doing, stop to do	(61)
一言辨异:as, like	(59)	妙辨异同:person, people	(62)
真题回放:考查询问长相	(59)	图解助记:glasses 与 glass	(62)
图解助记:“频度副词”	(60)	一言辨异:remember to do, remember doing	(63)
归纳拓展:形单意双的名词	(60)	一言辨异:say, speak, talk	(63)

UNIT 8 I'd like some noodles.

一言辨异:would like to, like	(68)	图解辨析:large, big, great	(72)
真题回放:考查 would like to do	(68)	巧学助记:巧记 reason 的用法	(73)
归纳拓展:以 o 结尾复数加-es 的名词	(69)	妙辨异同:menu, list, program	(73)
归纳拓展:以 o 结尾复数加-s 的名词	(69)	真题回放:考查 Would you like to do 的拒绝答语	(74)
图解助记:eat soup, drink soup	(71)	巧学助记:不可数名词的用法记忆歌诀	(74)
巧学助记:巧记 fish 的一词多义	(71)		
妙辨异同:large, big, great	(72)		

UNIT 9 How was your weekend?

巧学助记:规则动词过去式构成方法口诀	(77)	归类卡片:学科小结	(80)
真题回放:考查 go 的一般过去式	(77)	图解助记:“日子”	(81)
归纳拓展:What about...? 的各种用法	(78)	归纳拓展:go + doing	(81)
归纳拓展:do some + v-ing	(78)	真题回放:考查一般过去时	(82)
图解助记:present 的一词多义	(79)	真题回放:考查一般过去时	(82)
归纳拓展:过去时态时间状语	(79)	真题回放:考查一般过去时	(84)
图解助记:mountain 及其相关词	(80)	真题回放:考查一般过去时	(84)

UNIT 10 Where did you go on vacation?

妙辨异同:vacation, holiday	(87)	一言辨异:feel 的一词多义	(91)
归纳拓展:四大著名博物馆	(87)	图解助记:make 的搭配	(92)
归纳拓展:-ion 结尾的名词	(88)	真题回放:考查 be made from	(92)
妙辨异同:exam, test	(88)	真题回放:考查一般过去时	(93)
真题回放:考查 make sb. do sth.	(91)	真题回放:考查一般过去时	(93)

UNIT 11 What do you think of game shows?

图解助记:stand 的一词多义	(96)		(99)
一言辨异:stand 的一词多义	(96)	妙辨异同:agree on, agree to, agree with	(99)
图解助记:mind 的一词多义	(97)	词汇绿卡:article	(100)
真题回放:考查 mind doing 的用法	(97)	词汇绿卡:by	(100)
妙辨异同:host, master	(98)	真题回放:考查表达不喜欢的句子	(102)
归纳拓展:合形成形容词	(98)	真题回放:考查 too 的用法	(102)
一言辨异:agree, agree to, agree on, agree with			

UNIT 12 Don't eat in class.

归纳拓展:rule 的搭配	(105)	妙辨异同:by, till/until	(108)
图解辨析:fight, quarrel	(105)	图解辨析:by, till/until	(108)
图解助记:outside 及其相关词	(106)	妙辨异同:loudly, aloud, loud	(109)
真题回放:考查 outside 的用法	(106)	真题回放:考查 loud 和 loudly 的用法	(109)
词汇绿卡:have to	(107)	巧学助记:祈使句“四说”	(110)
词汇绿卡:else	(107)	真题回放:考查祈使句的用法	(110)

Unit 1

Where's your pen pal from? 你的笔友是哪里人?

A
部
分

Language Goals: Talk about countries, nationalities and languages; ask and tell where people live

语言目标: 谈论国家、国籍和语言; 询问和讲述人们住在哪里

英汉对照

考点注释

Section A

A部分

1a Listen and repeat these countries.
听录音, 并跟着读这些国家名称。

Where is your pen pal from?
你的笔友是哪里人?



He's from Australia.
他是澳大利亚人。

Where is your pen pal from?
你的笔友是哪里人?



She's from Japan.
她是日本人。

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Canada | 2. France | 3. Japan | 4. the United States |
| 加拿大 | 法国 | 日本 | 美国 |
| 5. Australia | 6. Singapore | 7. the United Kingdom | 8. China |
| 澳大利亚 | 新加坡 | 英国 | 中国 |

- pal [pæl] n. (口) 好朋友; 伙伴
- Australia [ɒ'streɪliə] 澳洲; 澳大利亚
- Japan [dʒə'pæn] 日本
- France [fræns], [frɑ:ns] 法国
- the United States [ju:'naɪtɪd 'steɪts] 美国
- Singapore [ˌsɪŋə'pɔː] 新加坡
- the United Kingdom [ju:'naɪtɪd 'kɪŋdəm] 英国
- pen pal 笔友
- Canada ['kænədə] 加拿大

本页生词

Section A

① a) "Where is your pen pal from?" 你的笔友是哪里人? "He's from Australia." 他是澳大利亚人。询问某人从哪里来, 用特殊疑问句 "Where be sb. from?" 某人从哪里来/是哪里人?, 回答用 "Sb. be from..." 某人从...来/是...人。

- ▶ —Where are you from? 你是哪儿人?
- I'm from Jilin. 我是吉林人。
- ▶ —Are you from the USA? 你是从美国来的吗?
- Yes, I am. 是的, 我从美国来。

拓展 be from 意为“从...来, 是...人”, 相当于 come from。

- ▶ —Where do they come from? 他们是哪儿人?
- They come from China. 他们是中国入。



像 where 这样的特殊疑问词引导的问句是特殊疑问句, 到目前为止, 对于特殊疑问句你了解多少? 请点击下框“巧学助记”。

b) pen pal 笔友

- ▶ He is a pen pal of mine. 他是我的笔友。
- ▶ I have a pen pal in America. 我有一个笔友在美国。

拓展 pal 用法与 friend 相同。pal 多用于口语中或用于构成合成词, 表示在某方面关系密切的朋友。pen pal 意思等同于 pen friend。

非常点拨

巧学助记

特殊疑问句用法歌诀

what 用途真广泛, 要问“什么”它当先。(What's this?)
how 开头来“问安”, (How are you?)
who 问“谁”, (Who's that man?)
“谁的”whose 来承担, (Whose eraser is this?)
询问“某地”用 where, (Where is her cat?)
“哪一个”which 句首站。(Which one?)

真题回放

(2009·重庆)

I got an e-mail this morning. It was _____ my foreign friend, Tony.

- A. in B. on C. at D. from

【解析】D。题意: 今天早上我收到一份邮件, 来自我的外国朋友托尼。from“来自”, 符合题意。

1b Listen and **circle** the countries in 1a you hear.

听录音,并在 1a 中圈出你所听到的国家。

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversations in the picture. Then make your own conversation.

练习图中的对话。

然后自己编写对话。

A: Where is your pen pal from?

你的笔友是哪里人?

B: She's from Japan.

她是日本人。

2a Where are these cities? Complete the chart below.

这些城市在哪里? 完成下列图表。

	City 城市	Country 国家
✓ Australia 澳大利亚	Sydney 悉尼	Australia 澳大利亚
the United States 美国	New York 纽约	
Canada 加拿大	Paris 巴黎	
France 法国	Toronto 多伦多	
Japan 日本	Tokyo 东京	

2b Listen and **circle** the cities and countries in 2a you hear.

听录音,并在 2a 中圈出你所听到的城市和国家。

2c Listen again and complete the chart.

再听一遍,完成图表。

2d PAIRWORK 结对活动

Talk about the information in the chart above.

谈论上述图表中的信息。

Where is John's pen pal from?
约翰的笔友是哪里人?

He's from Japan.
他是日本人。



Where does he **live**?
他住在哪里?

He lives in Tokyo.
他住在东京。

• country ['kʌntri] n. 国家

• Sydney ['sɪdni] 悉尼(澳大利亚东南部城市)

• New York ['nju: 'jɔ:k] 纽约 • Paris ['pærɪs] 巴黎(法国首都)

• Toronto [tə'rontəu] 多伦多(加拿大城市)

• Tokyo ['təʊkiəu] 东京(日本首都) • live [liv] v. 居住

② country n. [C] 国家

▶ Japan is an island country. 日本是一个岛国。

▶ I love my country very much. 我十分热爱祖国。

拓展 country n. 乡下,农村(常与 the 连用,用单数形式)

提醒 有关 country 的一词多义,请点击下框“图解助记”。

③ a) “Where does he live?”他住在哪里/是哪里人? where 和动词 live 搭配时,动词后面不用介词。回答时,可以用完整的句子,也可以用“介词+地名”,还可以直接回答地名。

▶ —Where does your aunt live? 你姑姑住在哪里?

—(She lives in) Jinan. 她住在济南。

b) live v. 居住

▶ He lives in a small village with his mother. 他和母亲住在一个小村子里。

▶ My brothers live in America. 我的哥哥们住在美国。

▲ live 作“居住”讲时后面不能直接跟地点名词,而要跟地点状语。

👉 stay 也可表示“住”,live 与之有什么区别? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

参考答案

• 1b Canada, Australia, Japan, Singapore

• 2a Sydney Australia
New York the United States
Paris France
Toronto Canada
Tokyo Japan

• 2b Japan, Tokyo, France
Paris, Australia, Sydney

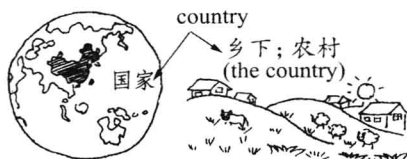
• 2c

Name	City	Country
John	Tokyo	Japan
Jodie	Paris	France
Andrew	Sydney	Australia

非常点拨

图解

助记 country 的一词多义



一言辨异

He **lives** in Beijing but now he **stays** in Shanghai. 他住在北京,但是现在却在上海。

——live 指长时间居住;stay 则指暂住,短时间停留。

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Where is your pen pal from? 你的笔友是哪国人?	He's from Australia. 他是澳大利亚人。
Where is John's pen pal from? 约翰的笔友是哪国人?	He's from Japan. 他是日本人。
Where does he live? 他住在哪里?	He lives in Paris. 他住在巴黎。

3a Look at the names of the countries in the box below. What languages do people speak in these countries? Fill in the diagram below.
看下列方框中的国家名称。这些国家的人讲什么语言? 填写下列图表。

✓ Singapore 新加坡 Australia 澳大利亚 the United States 美国 the United Kingdom 英国 China 中国	What languages ^④ do they speak? 他们讲什么语言?
	Chinese Chinese and English English 汉语 汉语和英语 英语 _____ Singapore _____ 新加坡

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Imagine you have a pen pal from one of the countries above. Make a conversation.
假设你有一个笔友,来自上边其中的一个国家。编写对话。

This is my new pen pal.
这是我的新笔友。
She's from Australia.
她是澳大利亚人。

What language does she speak?
她讲什么语言?

She speaks English.
她讲英语。

4 QUIZ 小测验 Name that place! 说出那个地方!

In pairs, write ten quiz questions. Ask another pair these questions.
两人一组,写出10个小测验问题。向另一组提问这些问题。

- Q: Where is Sydney? A: Australia.
悉尼在哪里? 澳大利亚。
- A组: Where is Sydney? B组: In the United States.
悉尼在哪里? 在美国。
- A组: No! In Australia!!
不对! 在澳大利亚!!

参考答案

- 3a Chinese only; China
English only; the United Kingdom, Australia, the United States

Section B

B部分

1 Match the countries with the languages.
将这些语言与这些国家联系起来。

- Japanese^① for Kids Chinese Is Fun! **b**
儿童日语 汉语真有趣!
- Our World in English French for Today
我们的英语世界 今日法语

- a. France b. China c. Japan d. the United States
法国 中国 日本 美国

参考答案

- 1 Japanese for Kids **c** Chinese Is Fun! **b**
Our World in English **d** French for Today **a**



- language [ˈlæŋɡwɪdʒ] n. 语言
- Japanese [ˌdʒæpəˈniːz] n. 日语; 日本人
- world [wɜː(r)ld] n. 世界
- French [ˈfrentʃ] n. 法国人; 法语



非常点拨

④ language n. [C]语言

- ▶ English is a difficult language for me. 英语对我来说是一种难学的语言。
- ▶ He can speak two languages. 他能说两门语言。
- ▶ body language 肢体语言
- the spoken/written language 口语/书面语

词汇绿卡

① Japanese n. [U]日语; 日本人

- ▶ Do you speak Japanese? 你讲日语吗?
- ▶ I have seen a Japanese. 我见过一个日本人。
- (a) 当 Japanese, Chinese 表示“日语, 汉语”时, 名词前不加冠词。
- (b) Japanese, Chinese 这种以 -ese 结尾的表示民族名称的名词, 其单复数同形。

词汇绿卡



2a Listen and number the questions you hear.

听录音,并给你听到的问题编号。

1. What's her name?
她叫什么名字?
- Does she have brothers or sisters?^②
她有兄弟姐妹吗?
- Where is she from?
她是哪里人?
- Where does she live?
她住在哪里?
- What's her favorite subject?
她最喜爱的科目是什么?
- Does she speak English?
她讲英语吗?

2b Listen again and write short answers to the questions [1-4] in 2a.

再听一遍,对2a中的问题[1-4]作出简略回答。

1. Maria
玛丽亚
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

You are Lucy. Your partner is Lucy's mom. Ask and answer questions about you and your pen pal. 你是露西。你的同伴是露西的妈妈。就有关露西笔友的情况提问并回答。

- A: Is that your new pen pal?
那是你的新笔友吗?
- B: Yes, it is.
是的。

3a Read this letter. Then write answers to the questions in the box.

读这封信。然后回答方框中的问题。

Dear Student,
亲爱的同学:

My name is Bob. I live in Toronto, Canada, and I want^③ a pen pal in China. I think China is a very interesting country.^④ I'm 14 years old and my birthday is in November. I can speak English and a little^⑤ French. I have a brother, Paul, and a sister, Sarah. They have pen pals in the United States. I have a pen pal in Australia. I like to write to him. I want to know more about his country.

非常点拨

妙辨异同 little/a little, few/a few

功能	修饰不可数名词	修饰可数名词
意义	little	few
否定(几乎没有,少)	little	few
肯定(有些,有几个)	a little	a few

② a) 本句是一个选择疑问句,选择疑问句是用 or 连接询问的两部分,以供选择,应根据实际情况作答,答案必须是完整的句子或其省略形式,不能简单地用 yes 或 no 来回答。一般提出两种或两种以上的可能,问对方选择哪一种。其结构可用一般疑问句,也可用特殊疑问句。

- ▶ Shall we leave at six or at seven? 我们是 6 点还是 7 点动身?
- ▶ We shall leave at six. 我们将在 6 点动身。
- ▶ How many pens do you have, one or two? 你有几支钢笔,一支还是两支?
- ▶ One. 一支。

b) or conj 或者

- ▶ Do you like this book or that one? 你喜欢这本书还是那本?
- ▶ This one. 这本。

You may spend two or three days there. 你可以在那里呆上两三天。

③ want v. 要,想要

- ▶ Do you want this piece of bread? 你想要这片面包吗?
- ▶ Do you want some coffee? 你要咖啡吗?

搭配 want sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事

I want you to give him the book. 我想让你把这本书交给他。

④ I think“我认为,我觉得”,后面常接一个句子作宾语,也可用做插入语。

- ▶ I think you are wrong. 我认为你错了。
- ▶ She is about 20, I think, and is very beautiful. 我觉得她大约 20 岁,而且她很漂亮。

在 I think 句式,如从句有否定意义,则否定词应前移,叫做否定转移。

[译] 我认为他不会来的。

[误] I think he will not come.

[正] I don't think he will come.

⑤ a little 一点儿

- ▶ I only eat a little food. 我只吃了一点点食物。
- ▶ There's a little rice in the bowl. 碗里有一点点米饭。

a little 修饰名词时,只用于修饰不可数名词。

联想 a few“有些,几个”,修饰可数名词。

I have a few friends. 我有几个朋友。

提示 请点击下框“妙辨异同”,进一步学习记忆 little, a little, few, a few 的区别。

参考答案

- 2a What's her name? 1
Where is she from? 2
Where does she live? 3
Does she have brothers or sisters? 4
Does she speak English? 5
- 2b (1) Maria (2) Canada
(3) Toronto (4) Yes, she does.

真题回放

(2008·北京朝阳区)

—Shall we leave now?

—Don't hurry. We still have _____ time left.

A. little B. a little C. few D. a few

【解析】B。题意:“我们现在就离开吗?”“别着急。我们还剩下一点时间。”a little 意为“一点”,修饰不可数名词,符合题意。

Kingdom and Australia. I like going to the movies with my friends and playing sports. My favorite subject in school is P. E. It's fun. But I don't like math. It's too difficult! It's very interesting. But I don't like math. It's too difficult!

Can you write to me soon?
你能早日给我写信吗?

Bob
鲍勃

1. Where is Bob from? 鲍勃是哪国人?
2. What does he want? 他想要什么?
3. What languages does he speak? 他讲什么语言?
4. What does he like? 他喜欢什么?

3b Complete the pen pal letter with the information on the card.

用卡片上的信息,完成这封找笔友的信。

Name: Tom King First Name: Tom
姓名: 汤姆·金 名: 汤姆
Last Name: King Age: 14
姓: 金 年龄: 14
From: Australia Language: English
国籍: 澳大利亚 语言: 英文
Favorite Sport: Soccer
最喜爱的运动: 足球
Favorite Subject: Music
最喜爱的科目: 音乐
Favorite Movie: The Long Weekend
最喜爱的电影: 《漫长的周末》
Family: Sam(brother), Lisa(sister)
家人: 山姆(弟弟), 丽莎(妹妹)

PEN PAL WANTED

寻找笔友

My name is Tom King. I'm 14 years old and I'm from Australia. I speak English. I have a brother, Sam, and a sister, Lisa. I play soccer on weekends. It's my favorite sport. I like music at school. It's fun! My favorite movie is The Long Weekend. Do you know it? It's an action movie.

这是一部动作片。

Please write and tell me about yourself.
请给我写信讲讲你自己。

参考答案

- 3a 1. Toronto, Canada
2. A pen pal in China
3. English and a little French
4. He likes going to the movies with his friends and playing sports.
- 3b 1. name 2. years 3. Australia
4. English 5. sister 6. soccer
7. music 8. movie

3c Make an information card. Then write an e-mail about 制作一张信息卡。然后写一封介绍你自己的电子邮件。
Dear friend,
亲爱的朋友:
My name is...
我叫.....

Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.
关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Canada
加拿大 | <input type="checkbox"/> Japan
日本 | <input type="checkbox"/> from
来自 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> New York
纽约 | <input type="checkbox"/> Tokyo
东京 | <input type="checkbox"/> English
英语 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> French
法语 | <input type="checkbox"/> live
住 | <input type="checkbox"/> pen pal
笔友 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Japanese
日语 | <input type="checkbox"/> language
语言 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> the United States
美国 | | <input type="checkbox"/> Australia
澳大利亚 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> France
法国 | <input type="checkbox"/> the United Kingdom
英国 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Singapore
新加坡 | | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.
在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Imagine and describe the new students in your class.
想象并描述你们班上的新生。

Sally Jim Julie
莎莉 吉姆 朱莉

Write about:
写出有关情况:
name
姓名
age
年龄
country
国籍
language
语言
likes and dislikes
好恶

4 Tell your classmates which of the new students you like best.
告诉班上的同学,你最喜欢哪一个新生。

- like [laɪk] n. (pl.) 爱好
- dislike [dɪs'laɪk] v. 讨厌; 不喜欢
[dɪs'laɪk] n. 反感; 厌恶(的对象)





语法在线

Where... from? 句型

询问“某人来自哪里? / 某人是哪里人?”用“Where + be + 主语 + from?”或“Where + 助动词 + 主语 + come from?”

- ▶ —Where is he from? / Where does he come from? 他来自哪里?
—He is from Jinan. / He comes from Jinan. 他来自济南。
- ▶ —Where are they from? / Where do they come from? 他们是哪里人?
—They are from America. / They come from America. 他们是美国人。

Where... live? 句型

询问“某人居住在什么地方?”其结构为“Where + 助动词 + 主语 + live?”

- ▶ —Where does your uncle live? 你的叔叔住在什么地方?
—He lives in a factory. 他住在一家工厂里。
- ▶ —Where do those students live? 那些学生住在哪里?
—They live in Nanjing Road. 他们住在南京路。

What language...? 句型

询问“某人讲什么语言?”用“What language do/does sb. speak?”

- ▶ —What language does your teacher speak? 你们老师讲什么语言?
—She speaks English. 她讲英语。
- ▶ —What language do you speak? 你讲什么语言?
—I speak Chinese. 我讲汉语。



点击名题

1. — _____ are you from?
—China.
A. Where B. Which
C. What D. Why
【解析】题意:“你从哪里来?”“中国。”Where be + sb. from? 意为“某人从哪里来/某人是哪里人?”,其余选项不符合题意。
【答案】A
2. —Where _____ live?
—I live in Beijing.
A. are you B. do you
C. you D. you do
【解析】题意:“你住在哪里?”“我住在北京。”由后句的回答判断应是询问居住的地方,Where + 助动词 + 主语 + live? 意为“某人居住在哪里?”,故B项正确。
【答案】B
3. — _____ language do you speak?
—French.
A. Where B. Which
C. What D. Why
【解析】题意:“你说哪种语言?”“法语。”What language + 助动词 + sb. speak? 意为“某人说哪种语言?”,其余选项不符合题意。
【答案】C

学法指导

每天按时听英语磁带,或者看些英语动画,既可以练习听力也可以练习口语,更好地培养你的语感。其实国外刚出生的孩子,他们就是听到周围全都是英语声音,慢慢才会说的,他们也不会写英文字,也不懂语法,但他们就是会说,所以现在我们就像新生的婴儿学英语一样,我们也需要环境,所以每天必须要制造这种氛围,在家多听些英语或者是看些英语电影!

单元同步测试

满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分

I. 单项选择 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- They come from the US. They are .
A. American B. America
C. Americans D. Americas
- I don't know how to say "jiaozi" English.
Could you tell me?
—Sure. Dumpling.
A. in B. at C. from D. of
- What do you do weekends?
A. of B. in C. on D. for
- He likes going fishing and sports with his friends.
A. play B. plays C. playing D. played
- He likes books and the piano.
A. reading; play B. reading; playing
C. read; playing D. read; play
- Where Sydney?
A. are B. is C. do D. does
- Where Jim's friend from?
—The United Kingdom.
A. does; come B. does; live
C. do; come D. are; live
- You speak Chinese well.
— .
A. You're right B. No, it's not good
C. Thank you D. Not at all
- What language do you speak?
— .
A. England B. China
C. French D. Australia
- China is interesting country.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
- do you like about China?
—The people and the food.
A. What B. Why C. How D. When
- Paris is in .
A. Canada B. Australia
C. France D. Japan
- Where does your friend live ?
—He lives in Shanghai.
A. from B. to C. in D. /
- They can Chinese.
A. say B. talk C. speak D. in
- Does he enjoy TV after school?
A. watch B. to watch
C. watching D. watches

II. 完形填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Lucy is from England. She 1 English. She can also speak 2 Chinese. She is in Shanghai now. She 3 in a middle school. She 4 classes on weekdays. She often 5 her mother go shopping 6 Sundays. Her father is in Shanghai. He 7 English. Her mother also 8 in Shanghai. They 9 Chinese food. And they like China and the Chinese people 10 .

- A. speaking B. to speak
C. speak D. speaks
- A. many B. a few C. a little D. little
- A. study B. studied
C. studies D. is studying
- A. has B. have C. is D. are
- A. is helping B. helped
C. helps D. help
- A. at B. before C. on D. in
- A. teaches B. teaches
C. teach D. is teaching
- A. working B. is working
C. work D. works
- A. liking B. is like C. like D. likes
- A. very well B. very much
C. very good D. very friendly

III. 阅读理解 (共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

A

Mr Green is from London. He is a teacher. He is in China now. He works in a middle school in Beijing. He teaches English. His students all like him very much. He has two children, a son and a daughter. But they go to different schools by car. He begins his classes at 8:00. Mr Green can speak a little Chinese. He goes to Chinese classes every week. He says the Chinese people are very friendly to him. He likes working in China. Mrs Green is in England now. She is coming to China soon.

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

- Mr Green is from .
A. America B. England C. Canada D. Australia
- Mr Green works .
A. in a factory B. in London
C. in a school D. on a farm
- There are people in his family.
A. one B. two C. three D. four
- The children go to school .
A. by car B. by bus
C. by bike D. on foot
- Mr green goes to Chinese classes .
A. every day B. on Sunday
C. on weekends D. every week

B

Do you know the girl in a hat with flowers on it? Her name is Hezi. Hezi is a nice Japanese girl, my new pen pal. She lives in Tokyo.

I like Hezi. I don't know Japanese, and Hezi doesn't know Chinese. But we know some English. So we write to each other(彼此) in English. We are in the same age, 12 years old. My favorite subject is math. But her favorite subject is biology. We both like football very much. She lives with her parents. She is their only child. She likes going to movies on weekends. She likes cartoons best.

She hopes to come to Beijing this summer.

根据短文内容填写下面表格。

Pen pal's name: 6
Age: 7
Country(国籍): 8
Language: 9
City: 10
Favorite subject: biology
Favorite sport: football
Favorite kind of movies: cartoons

6. 7. 8.

9. 10.

IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据短文内容回答问题。

Alice comes from England. She's an English girl. She speaks English. She can speak a little Chinese. Now she is a student in our school. We are in the same class. Her favourite subject is Chinese. Her favourite sport is swimming. We are good friends. We often play games together.

Alice's father is a teacher. He teaches English in our school. He is a good teacher. He is strict(严格的) with his students. They enjoy living in China. They like Chinese food and Chinese people.

1. Where is Alice from?

2. Can Alice speak Chinese?

3. What's Alice's favourite sport?

4. Is Alice's father an English teacher?

5. Does Alice like China?

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. She comes from (加拿大).
2. Everybody has his (爱好).
3. We (居住) in Beijing.
4. (新加坡) is a country in Southeast Asia.
5. China is one of the (国家) in the world.
6. T is the capital of Japan.
7. We have friends all over the w .
8. I have a pen p in America.
9. —What l does Tom speak?
—French.
10. New York is an A city.

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. My father lives in Beijing. (对划线部分提问)
 your father live?
2. There are some cars on the street. (改为一般疑问句)
 there cars on the street?
3. Simon is from Japan. (改为同义句)
 Simon Japan.
4. I have some pen pals in UK. (改为一般疑问句)
 you have pen pals in UK?
5. I think China is a very old country. (改为否定句)
 I China a very old country.

VII. 补全对话(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

从方框中选择最恰当的选项完成下列对话,并将答案写在相应的横线上。

- A. Do you like China?
B. We are from America.
C. The food and the people.
D. My name is Wu Di.
E. Only a little.

A: Welcome to our school. Are you English?

B and C: No, we aren't. 1

A: Are the two boys your friends? Are they Americans, too?

B and C: No, they are from Canada.

A: Thank you. I'm your new teacher. 2 Do you speak Chinese?

B and C: 3

A: 4

B and C: We like it very much. It's beautiful.

A: What do you like about it?

B and C: 5

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

假如你叫 Li Ying, 请依据下表所列内容给你想认识的英国笔友 Linda 写一封信介绍你的情况, 信的开头和结尾已给出。要求: 60 词左右。

Name	Li Ying	Sex	Girl	Age	16
Hometown	Guangzhou	School	No. 15 Middle School		
Likes	travel, dance, computer games, songs, shopping				
Dislikes	stay at home, basketball, football				

May, 8

Dear Linda,

Yours,
Li Ying

Unit 2

Where's the post office?

邮局在哪里?

A
部
分

Language Goal: Ask for and give directions on the street

语言目标: 在街上问路和指路

英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Match the words with the places in the picture.

将单词与图中的地点联系起来。

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. post office f
邮局 | 2. library
图书馆 | 3. hotel
旅馆 |
| 4. restaurant
餐馆 | 5. bank
银行 | 6. supermarket
超市 |
| 7. street
街道 | 8. pay phone
公用电话 | 9. park
公园 |

Is there a bank near here?
附近有银行吗?



Yes, there is. It's on Center Street.
有,在中心大街上。



- **post** [pəʊst] n. 邮件; 邮递
- **office** ['ɑ:fis], ['ɒfɪs] n. 办公室; 事务所
- **post office** 邮局
- **library** ['laɪbrəri], ['laɪbrəri] n. 图书馆
- **restaurant** ['restərənt], ['restərɒnt] n. 餐馆; 饭店
- **bank** [bæŋk] n. 银行
- **supermarket** ['su:pə(r),mɑ:(r)kɪt] n. 超级市场
- **St abbr.** (= street) 街; 街道
- **pay** [peɪ] v. 付钱; 支付
- **park** [pɑ:(r)k] n. 公园
- **center** ['sentə(r)] n. 中央; 中心
- **street** [stri:t] n. 街; 街道
- **pay phone** n. 投币式公用电话
- **there** [ðer], [ðeə] adv. 在那里

本页生词

考点注释

Section A

① post office 邮局

My family is near the post office. 我家在邮局附近。



post office 中 post 作 office 的定语, 对于这类名词作定语的一些固定用法你了解多少? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

② a) 本句是一个 **there be** 句型的一般疑问句形式, 是问路的常用语, 肯定回答是 **Yes, there is/are.** 否定回答是 **No, there isn't/aren't.** 本句改为陈述句语序为 **There is a bank near here.**

Is there a library in the school? 学校里有图书馆吗?

—Are there any pools near the park? 公园附近有游泳池吗?

—Yes, there are. 是的, 有。

—No, there aren't. 不, 没有。



你还知道哪些问路的方式? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

b) there adv. 在那里

Don't put the table there. 不要把桌子放在那儿。

He lives there. 他住在那里。

from there 从那里

near there 那附近

over there 在那里(指较远)

非常点拨

归纳拓展

名词作定语

- goods train 货车
- milk bottle 奶瓶
- paper money 纸币
- police station 警察局
- apple tree 苹果树
- telephone number 电话号码
- shoe box 鞋盒
- photo shop 照相馆

归纳拓展

问路常用方式

- Excuse me. Is there a bank here?
- Where's the bank?
- Could you tell me the way to the bank?
- How can I get to the bank?

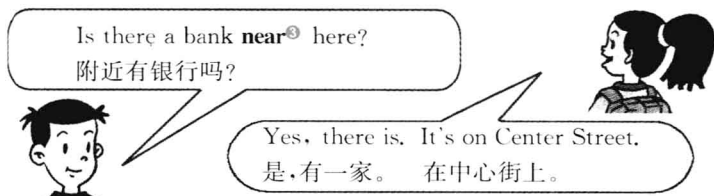
1b Listen and **circle** the places in 1a you hear.

听录音,并在 1a 中圈出你所听到的地点。

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Then ask and answer questions about the other
练习下面的对话。 然后就图片中其他地点提问并予以回答。

places in the picture.



2a Match the sentences with the pictures. Write each number in the box.

将句子与图片联系起来。 在方框中写数字。



- The pay phone is **across from** the library.
投币式公用电话在图书馆对面。
- The pay phone is **next to** the library.
投币式公用电话在图书馆旁边。
- The pay phone is **between** the post office and the library.
投币式公用电话在邮局与图书馆中间。
- The pay phone is on Green Street.
投币式公用电话在格林街上。
- The pay phone is **in front of** the library.
投币式公用电话在图书馆前面。
- The pay phone is **behind** the library.
投币式公用电话在图书馆后面。

- **near** [nɪr], [nɪə] *prep.* 在……附近
- **across** [ə'krɒs], [ə'krɒs] *prep.* 横过; 在对面
- across from 在……对面
- **next** [nekst] *prep.* 紧靠……的旁边; 贴近
- next to 紧靠……的旁边; 贴近; 最接近
- **between** [bi'twi:n] *prep.* 介于(两者或更多者)之间
- **front** [frʌnt] *n.* 前面; 前边
- in front of 在……前面
- **behind** [bi'hænd] *prep.* 在……之后

3 near *prep./adv.* 在……附近

The lake is near our school. 那个湖在我们学校附近。

Don't sit near the door. 别坐在门口。

She lives quite near. 她住得很近。

拓展 near *adj.* 近的

The supermarket is very near. 超级市场很近。

提示 near 的反义词是 far. 请点击下框“图解助记”, 学习 near 与 far.

4 across from 在……对面

The school is across from our house. 学校在我们家的对面。

She sits across from me. 她坐在我的对面。

across from 也可分开使用。

He lives across the street from us. 他住在我们大街对面。

拓展 across *prep.* 横过; 在对面

We walk across the street. 我们穿过马路。

5 next to 紧靠……的旁边; 贴近; 最接近

Peter is sitting next to Paul on the sofa. 彼得紧挨着保罗坐在沙发上。

There's a garden next to the house. 房子隔壁有一座花园。

Shanghai is my favorite city next to Paris. 我最喜欢的城市是巴黎, 其次是上海。

next to 可用来表示空间位置、顺序、价值。

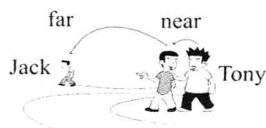
参考答案

- 1a 1. f 2. a 3. e 4. i 5. c
6. b 7. h 8. g 9. d
- 1b restaurant, post office, supermarket
- 2a Picture 1: 4
Picture 2: 6
Picture 3: 2
Picture 4: 3
Picture 5: 5
Picture 6: 1

非常点拨

图解

助记 near, far



Tony is **near** to me, but Jack is **far** from me. 托尼离我很近, 但是杰克离我很远。

真题回放

(2008 · 安徽芜湖)

The policeman helped the old woman _____ the road.

A. above B. across C. through D. over

【解析】B. across“穿过, 越过”, 表示从某一表面穿过, 符合题意。above“在……的上方”, 指离开物体表面而在其上方; through“穿过”, 指从某一立体空间穿过; over“在……的上方”, 侧重于指横跨于两端。

2b Listen and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.
 听录音并且用方框中的单词填空。

next to 在……旁边 in front of 在……前面 between 在……中间
 behind 在……后面 across from 在……对面 on 在……上

- The library is between the restaurant and the supermarket.
图书馆在餐馆与超市之间。
- The park is the bank.
公园在银行的 .
- The supermarket is Fifth Avenue.
超市在第五大街 .
- The pay phone is the post office.
投币式公用电话在邮局的 .
- The restaurant is the post office.
餐馆在邮局的 .
- The hotel is the library.
旅馆在图书馆的 .

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions about the places in 1a.
 就 1a 中的地点提问并回答。



Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Is there a supermarket? | Yes, there is. / No, there isn't. |
| 这儿有超市吗? | 是的, 有超市。/ 不, 没有超市。 |
| Where's the park? | It's on Center Street. ^⑥ |
| 公园在哪儿? | 在中心街上。 |
| Where's the hotel? | It's across from the bank. |
| 旅馆在哪儿? | 在银行对面。 |
| Where's the pay phone? | It's next to the post office. |
| 投币式公用电话在哪儿? | 在邮局旁边。 |
| Where's the library? | It's between the restaurant and the supermarket. |
| 图书馆在哪儿? | 在餐馆与超市之间。 |

- ave *abbr.* (=avenue) 大街; 林荫道
- avenue [*'*ævinu:], [*'*ævinju:] *n.* 大街; 林荫道

一言辨异

I sit right **in the front of** the cinema but someone sits **in front of** me, so I can't see a thing. 我坐在电影院的前部, 但有人坐在我的前面, 所以我什么也看不见。

——in the front of 指内部的“前部”, 而 in front of 指位置“在……的前面”。

⑥ in front of 在……前面
 > The bus stops in front of our house. 公共汽车停在我们房前。

> There is a lady all in white in front of her. 一个一身白衣的妇女站在她的面前。

联想 behind *prep.* 在……之后

提示 in front of 与 in the front of 形似但意不同, 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

⑦ between... and... 在……和……之间
 > It's about two miles between my home and the school. 我家和学校之间大约有两英里路。

> She comes back between five and six o'clock. 她在五、六点钟之间回来。

提示 between 和 and 之间的两者可以是两个人, 也可以是两个不同的物或两个点(时间、数字、地点)。

拓展 between *prep.* 介于(两者或多者)之间, 若后面跟代词时要用宾格。

> There is a table between the two beds. 那两张床中间有一张桌子。

> Put the desk between us. 把课桌放在我们俩中间。

提示 between 通常用在两者之间; among 通常用在三者或三者以上之间。进一步加深记忆, 请点击下框“图解辨异”, 并研读下列例句。

> The man is between two wolves. 那位男子在两匹狼之间。

> The hare is among several tigers. 那只野兔在几只老虎之间。

⑧ 这句话中的 on 表示地点, 意为“在……上; 在……旁”, 一般指与面或线接触。

> The picture was hanging on the wall. 照片挂在墙上。

> New York is on the Hudson River. 纽约在哈德逊河畔。

搭配 on the beach 在沙滩上

on the farm 在农场

on the first floor 在一楼

on the playground 在操场上

拓展 on 还可以表示方位, 表示与某一地区是毗邻关系。

> Canada is on the south of the United States. 加拿大在美国的南面。

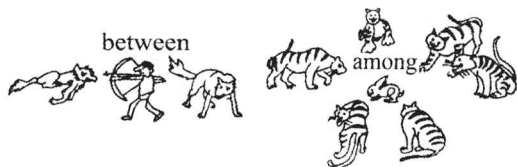
参考答案

- 2b 1. between 2. across from 3. on
 4. next to 5. in front of
 6. behind

非常点拨

图解

辨异 between, among



3a Read the conversation and find Paul and Nancy in the picture.

阅读对话,然后在图片中找出鲍尔和南希。

Paul: Excuse me. Is there a hotel in the neighborhood?

鲍尔: 劳驾。这附近有旅馆吗?

Nancy: Yes, there is. Just go straight and turn left. It's down Bridge

南希: 有,这儿有旅馆。一直向前走,然后向左转。旅馆在大桥街的

Street on the right. It's next to a supermarket.

Paul: Thank you very much.

鲍尔: 非常感谢。

Nancy: You're welcome.

南希: 不用谢。

3b Look at the picture above and complete the conversations.

看上面的图画,然后完成对话。

1. Is there a pay phone in the neighborhood? 附近有投币式公用电话吗?

2. Where's the bank? 银行在哪儿?

3. Is there a post office in the neighborhood? 附近有邮局吗?

4 GAME 游戏 Ask me a question! 问我一个问题!

Take turns to choose a place in the picture in 1a. Your classmates ask questions
轮流在 1a 的图片中选择一个地点。你的同学提问,然后猜测那
and then guess the place.

个地点。

A: Is it on Fifth Avenue? 它在第五大街上吗? B: Yes, it is. 是,是的。

C: Is it next to the library? 它在图书馆旁边吗? B: Yes, it is. 是,是的。

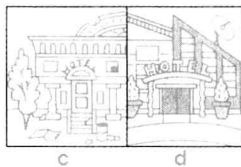
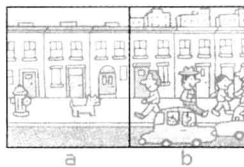
D: Is it the restaurant? 这是餐馆吗? B: Yes, it is. 是,是的。

Section B

B部分

1a Match the words with the pictures below.

将单词与下面的图片联系起来。



- neighborhood [ˈneɪbə(r)hʊd] n. 街区;附近;附近地区
- just [dʒʌst, dʒʌst] adv. 直接地;就;只,仅仅
- straight [streɪt] adv. 径直地;直接地
- turn [tɜ:(r)n] v. 转弯;转变方向
- left [left] adv. /n. 向左;左边
- down [daʊn] adv. /prep. 向下;下去;沿着
- right [raɪt] adv. /n. 向右;右边
- on the right 在右边

9 just adv. 直接地;就;只,仅仅

He is just a child. 他只是一个孩子。

I wait here just to see you. 我在这里等就是为了见你。

搭配 just here/there 就在这里/那里

10 turn left (adv.) = turn to the left (n.) 向左转, turn 可以直接加表示方向的副词。

Turn left at the end of the road. 在路的尽头向左拐。

The car turns to the north. 汽车转向北开。

拓展 left n. 左边 adj. 左边的

The school is on the left of the road. 学校在马路的左边。

The office is on the left side of the street. 这办事处在街道的左边。

搭配 on the left 在左边

to the left 靠左

11 down adv. / prep. 向下;下去;沿着

We walk down the stairs. 我们走下楼。

He walks down the street. 他沿着街道行走。

拓展 down adv. 在下面;降低;(从中央到地方,从北到南)往下方

思考 down 的多个词义你都记住了吗? 请点击下框“图解助记”。

12 on the right 在右边,表示方位。

The school is on the right. 学校在右边。

联想 to the right 靠右;向右

拓展 right n. 右边 adj. 右边的

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”,理解 right 的一词多义。

参考答案

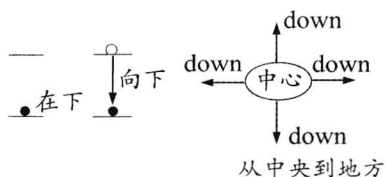
• 3b

- Yes, there is. Go straight down New Street and turn right. There's a pay phone on the right.
- Go straight down New Street and turn right. Turn left at Bridge Street. The bank is across from the street.
- Yes, there is. Turn right, then go straight down Bridge Street. The post office is on the left. It's across from the restaurant, next to the supermarket.

非常点拨

图解

助记 down 的一词多义



图解

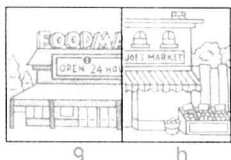
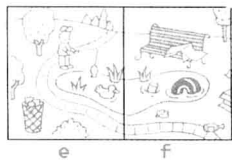
助记 right 的一词多义

In China driving on the right side is right. 在中国,行车靠右是对的。



In England driving on the right side is wrong. 在英国行车靠右就错了。



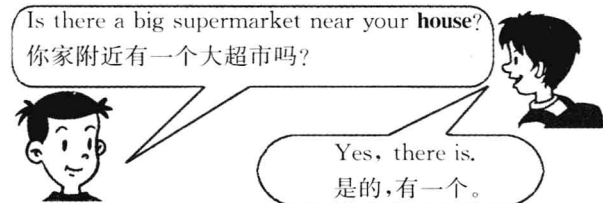


- e a **clean** park 干净的公园
- a **quiet** street 安静的街道
- a **dirty** park 肮脏的公园
- an old hotel 旧旅店

- a new hotel 新旅店
- a big supermarket 大超市
- a small supermarket 小超市
- a busy street 繁忙的街道

1b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask your partner about where he or she lives. 询问同伴他或她居住的地方。



2a Listen and circle the places in 1a you hear.

听录音,并在 1a 中圈出你所听到的地点。

2b Listen again. Complete the map of Michael's neighborhood in the box.

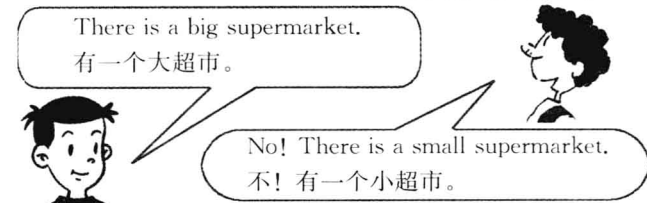
再听一遍。在方框中完成迈克尔所在街区的地图。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Student A, say one true thing and one false thing about the map above.

学生 A 就上面的地图说出一个真实的地点和一个错误的地点。

Student B, say "Yes" or "No". 学生 B 说“是”或“不是”。



3a Read the tour guide and circle the description words.

阅读旅游指南并且圈出描述性词语。

Welcome^① to the Garden District
欢迎来到花园区

Turn left on First Avenue and enjoy^⑤ the city's quiet^④ streets and small parks. Take a walk^⑥ through^⑦ the park on Center Avenue. Across from the

步行穿过中心大道上的公园。在公园对面,你

- clean [kli:n] adj. 清洁的;干净的
- dirty [dɜ:(r)ti] adj. 肮脏的
- open [ˈəʊpən] adj. 开着的;营业中的
- market [ˈmɑ:(r)kit] n. 市场;市集
- walk [wɔ:k] n. 散步;步行
- through [θru:] prep. 穿过;通过
- district [ˈdɪstrɪkt] n. 区域;地区
- enjoy [ɪnˈdʒɔɪ] v. 享受……的乐趣;欣赏
- quiet [ˈkwaɪət] adj. 宁静的
- house [haʊs] n. 房子;住宅
- take a walk 散步
- welcome [ˈwelkəm] int. 欢迎
- garden [ˈgɑ:(r)dən] n. 花园;菜园

Section B

- ① open adj. 开着的;营业中的
 - ▶ Leave the windows open. 让窗户都开着吧。
 - ▶ The bank is open from 9 am to 4 pm. 银行从上午9点到下午4点营业。
 - 拓展 open v. 开,打开
 - 联想 close v. 关闭;封闭
 - ▲ close 表示“关闭”,不能用做形容词,它的形容词形式为 closed(关闭的)。
 - 提示 为进一步理解记忆 open 与 close,请点击下框“图解助记”。
- ② clean adj. 清洁的;干净的
 - ▶ Keep yourself clean. 保持身体清洁。
 - ▶ Wash your hands clean before a meal. 饭前要将手洗干净。
 - 拓展 cleanly adv. 干净地,清洁地
 - 联想 dirty adj. 肮脏的
- ③ quiet adj. 宁静的
 - ▶ The streets are usually quiet in the afternoon. 下午街上通常很安静。
 - ▶ Please be quiet. 请安静。
 - ▲ 勿混: quite adv. 很,非常
- ④ welcome int. 欢迎
 - ▶ Welcome to Beijing. 欢迎到北京来。
 - ▶ Welcome! Come in please. 欢迎!快请进。
 - ▶ Welcome back/home! 欢迎归来!
 - 拓展 welcome v. 欢迎 adj. 受欢迎的
 - ▶ Welcome your friends to my home. 欢迎你的朋友到我家来。
 - ▶ —Thank you very much. 非常感谢你。
 - ▶ —You're welcome. 不用谢。
- ⑤ enjoy v. 享受……的乐趣;欣赏
 - ▶ He enjoys himself at the party. 他在聚会上玩得很愉快。
 - ▶ The audience enjoy the play very much. 观众们很欣赏这出戏。
 - 搭配 enjoy oneself (=have a good time) 过得快乐
- ⑥ take/have a walk 散步
 - ▶ We take a walk across the fields. 我们漫步走过田野。
 - 联想 go out for a walk 去散步
- ⑦ through prep. 穿过;通过
 - ▶ Light comes in through the window. 光线从那扇窗子透进来。

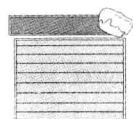
参考答案

- 1a a clean park e
- a new hotel d
- a quiet street a
- a big supermarket g
- a dirty park f
- a small supermarket h
- an old hotel c
- a busy street b

非常点拨

图解

助记 open, close



open 开着的 → open 开业 close 关闭 → closed 停业的
▲ 开业是 open, 不是 opened; 停业是 closed, 不是 close.

真题回放

(2008·安徽)

—I've never had such a wonderful time. Thank you for asking me.

- A. Good job
- B. That's it
- C. That's right
- D. You're welcome

【解析】D。题意：“我从来没有玩得如此高兴过,谢谢你邀请我。”“你太客气了。”

park is an old hotel. Next to the hotel is a small house with an interesting garden. This is the **beginning** of the garden tour.

参观花园就从这儿开始。

3b Look at the picture and fill in the blanks for this tour guide.

看图并给旅游指南填空。



Come to visit ^① Bridge Street

来参观大桥街

Bridge Street is a good **place to have fun**^①. It is a very ⁽¹⁾ street.

大桥街是一个很有趣味的好地方。这是一条繁忙的街道。

You can play the guitar in the ⁽²⁾. It's there, between the ⁽³⁾ and

你可以在 弹吉他。椅子在那边,在 和 ⁽⁴⁾ 之间。

如果你饿了,可以在 买些食品。

It's ⁽⁶⁾ the post office.

它在邮局 。

4a Write a tour guide for your neighborhood.

写一篇关于你们地区的旅游指南。

4b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Tell your partner about where you live. Your partner listens and draws a picture

告诉你的同伴你住在哪儿。你的同伴听完之后画一幅你居住地的地图。

My house is on a busy street.
我的家在一个繁忙的街道上。



Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | |
|---|---|
| • bridge [brɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 桥 | • beginning [brɪ'gɪnɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 开始 |
| • tour [tʊə], [tuə] <i>n.</i> 旅行; 游览 | • place [pleɪs] <i>n.</i> 地方; 地点 |
| • visit ['vɪzɪt] <i>v.</i> 参观; 游览 | • have fun 玩得开心 |
| • fun [fʌn] <i>n.</i> 愉快; 开心 | • hungry ['hʌŋgrɪ] <i>adj.</i> 饥饿的 |
| • if [ɪf] <i>conj.</i> (表条件) 如果 | |

You can see through glass. 可以透过玻璃看过去。

搭配 go through 穿过



我们在本单元前面学了 across, through, across 与 over 有什么区别? 请点击下框“一言辨异”和“图解辨异”。

⑧ beginning *n.* [C] 开始, 开端

A good beginning is half done. (谚) 良好的开端是成功的一半。

I read the book from beginning to end. 我把这本书从头到尾看完了。

搭配 at the beginning of 在……之初

from beginning to end 自始至终, 从头到尾

⑨ visit *v.* 参观; 游览

There are a lot of places to visit in the old city. 这座古城有许多可供参观的地方。

搭配 visit *v.* 拜访; 访问

I want to visit my teacher. 我想去拜访我的老师。

当谈及某人因事或兴趣来访时, 用 come to see sb. 比 visit sb. 更合适。如说 Thank you for visiting me. 不如说 Thank you for coming to see me. 更恰当。

⑩ have fun 玩得开心

Boys and girls, please come, have fun! 孩子们, 请过来, 尽情地玩吧!

We have great fun at the party. 晚会上我们玩得开心极了。

搭配 fun *n.* 愉快; 开心

本句是 if 引导的条件状语句, if 作连词, 意为“如果”, 表示条件。这种情况下, if 从句即使表示将来, 也不用将来时态, 而用一般现在时。

If I have enough money, I want to go to England. 如果我有足够的钱, 我想去英国。

I'd be very happy if you can come. 如果你能来我会很高兴。

参考答案

- 3b (1) busy (2) park
(3) restaurant (4) post office
(5) supermarket (6) across from

非常点拨



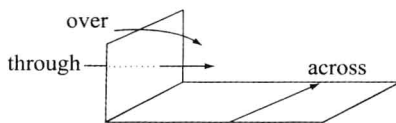
一言辨异

The Great Wall winds its way from west to east, **across** the deserts, **over** the mountains, **through** the valleys, till at last it reaches the sea. 长城从西向东, 穿过沙漠, 越过高山, 跨过深谷, 蜿蜒而行, 最后直达海边。

——across 强调从某个平面的一边到另一边; over 侧重越过某种障碍物等; through 指从某个立体空间内穿过。

图解

辨异 through, across, over



- | | | | |
|--|---|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> post office
邮局 | <input type="checkbox"/> pay phone
公用电话 | <input type="checkbox"/> in front of
在……前面 | <input type="checkbox"/> supermarket
超市 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> hotel 旅馆 | <input type="checkbox"/> bank 银行 | <input type="checkbox"/> street 街道 | <input type="checkbox"/> park 公园 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> clean 干净 | <input type="checkbox"/> dirty 肮脏 | <input type="checkbox"/> new 新的 | <input type="checkbox"/> old 旧的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> quiet 安静的 | <input type="checkbox"/> busy 忙碌的 | <input type="checkbox"/> big 大的 | <input type="checkbox"/> small 小的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> left
左边 | <input type="checkbox"/> right
右边 | <input type="checkbox"/> between
在……中间 | <input type="checkbox"/> next to
在……旁边 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> near
在……附近 | <input type="checkbox"/> across from
在……对面 | <input type="checkbox"/> behind
在……后面 | <input type="checkbox"/> restaurant
餐馆 |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 You are going to visit your friend. Read the e-mail from him and draw the route from the airport to his house.

Dear friend,
亲爱的朋友:

I know you are **arriving** next Sunday. ^① Let me tell you the **way** ^② to my house. I know you will arrive next Sunday. I will tell you how to get to my house.

Take ^③ a taxi from the airport. You **pass** ^④ a bank on your right and then go down Long Street. You go through Sixth Avenue, Seventh Avenue, and Eighth Avenue. When you see a big supermarket, turn left. Then go down Bridge Street and turn left at New Park. Go down Center Street and along the bridge street to New Park. Go down Center Street and along the center street, my house is on your right.

从机场乘出租车。经过右边的一家银行,然后沿着长街走。

穿过第六大街、第七大街和第八大街。

当你看见一个大超市时向左转。然后沿着大桥街走到新公园向左转。

沿着中心街走,我家就在右边。

I **hope** ^⑤ you have a good trip.
祝你旅途愉快。

Yours,
你的
Mike
迈克

- **arrive** [ə'raɪv] v. 到达;抵达
- **way** [weɪ] n. 路;路线;路途
- **take** [teɪk] v. 乘;坐;搭(车、船)
- **taxi** ['tæksɪ] n. 出租车;的士;计程车
- **airport** ['eɪəpɔ:t], ['eəpɔ:t] n. 飞机场
- **pass** [pæs], [pɑ:s] v. 通过
- **hope** [həʊp] v. 希望;盼望;期待
- **yours** [jɔ:(r)z] pron. 您的;你的(用在信末署名前,做客套语)

Self Check

① a) 本句中 **are arriving** 意为“就要到达”,是用进行时表示即将发生的将来的动作。

I'm going to China to have a meeting. 我将来去中国开会。

b) **arrive** v. 到达;抵达

I often arrive home late in the evening. 我晚上常常很晚才回到家。

They are arriving in Shanghai. 他们就要抵达上海了。

arrive 后接介词 in 和 at 时意义有何不同? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

② **way** n. [C]路;路线;路途

Could you tell me the way to the bus stop? 请告诉我到公共汽车站的路好吗?

I will buy a pen on my way back home. 我要在回家的路上买支钢笔。

The museum is a long way from here. 博物馆离此地很远。

搭配 give way 让路
on one's way to 去……的路上

③ **take** v. 乘;坐;搭(车、船)

They take a taxi to the hotel. 他们坐出租车去旅馆。

Do you take the bus or the train when you go home? 你回家坐公共汽车还是坐火车?

搭配 take the taxi/bus/coach/plane/train 乘出租车/公共汽车/长途汽车/飞机/火车

联想 by taxi 乘坐出租车,表示方式,在句中作状语。

④ **pass** v. 通过

You can buy some fruits when you pass the shop. 你经过商店时,能买到水果。

I pass the church on my way to work. 我上班时经过教堂。

搭配 pass by 经过
pass through 经过,路过;经历

⑤ **hope** v. 希望;盼望;期待

He hopes she will win. 他希望她会赢。

Everyone hopes for a good grade. 大家都盼望有个好成绩。

I hope to visit Paris this summer. 我希望今年夏天参观巴黎。

搭配 hope { that...
for sth. 希望……
to do sth.

hope 不可以用于 hope sb. to do sth. 之中。

非常点拨

妙辨异同 arrive at, arrive in

arrive at 用于较小的场所,如镇、家、店等。

arrive in 用于较大的地方,如国家、大都市等。



arrive at+小地方



arrive in+大地方

真题回放

(2008·四川资阳)

They _____ for Shanghai on Friday. Shall we go to see them off at the train station?

- A. left B. were leaving
C. have left D. are leaving

【解析】D。题意:他们周五要去上海。我们要去火车站给他们送行吗?根据时间状语 on Friday 及后一句中的 shall 判断用一般将来时。



语法在线

there be 句型

there be 句型主语通常应放在谓语 be 后面。此结构中,若主语为单数,用 there is;若主语为复数,用 there are。若主语不可数,则用 there is。

There are ten trees in front of the house. 房子前面有十棵树。

There is no water in the cup. 杯子里没有水。

there be 句型谓语应和后面的主语的数一致,若有两个或两个以上的主语,它常和最接近它的那个主语的数一致。

There is a bed and two chairs in the room. 房间里有一张床和两把椅子。

There are two chairs and a bed in the room. 房间里有两把椅子和一张床。

表示方位的介词

常见的表示方位的介词有:

- along 向前,沿着
- across 横过;在对面
- between 介于(两者或多者)之间
- behind 在……之后
- from 从……
- on 在……上
- over 在……远处
- out 在……外面
- through 穿过
- up 在……高处

He is walking **across** the road. 他正穿过马路。

Jane is walking **from** the table to the window. 简正从桌子那儿往窗户走。

The water passes **through** a pipe. 水流经管道。

John often climbs **up** the hill. 约翰经常去爬山。

点击名题

1. There _____ a talk show on CCTV-3 at eight this evening.

- A. is going to be B. is going to have
C. will have

【解析】题意:今天晚上8点,在中央三台将有一场脱口秀节目。表示某地存在某物用 there be 结构;表示按计划或打算将有用 be going to, 故选 A。

【答案】A

2. There _____ many new words in Section A. It's very difficult.

- A. are B. aren't C. is

【解析】题意:在 A 部分有很多生单词,很难。there be 句型中的谓语动词要由其主语 many words 决定,“很多生单词”是可数名词的复数形式,所以谓语动词用 are。

【答案】A

3. —What do you often do _____ classes to relax yourself?

—Listen to music.

- A. over B. among
C. between D. through

【解析】题意:“在课间的时候你经常干什么?”“听音乐。”between 用于两者之间。over“在……之上”;among“在三者或多者之间”;through“穿过”。

【答案】C

学法指导

目前由于条件所限,口语考试并没有大规模开展。但口语水平的高低却是中国人评价英语水平最重要的标准。同学们想要以后参加各种各样的口语竞赛、演讲比赛等活动,初中正是打好基础的大好时机。而口语水平的提高是和听力水平的提高相辅相成的。听力是输入,口语是输出。只有经历了海量的输入,高效地输出才成为可能。提高听力和口语比较好的途径是多听自己感兴趣的英文歌,多看自己感兴趣的英文原版电影。

非常点拨

真题回放

(2009·浙江宁波)

There _____ some milk, two eggs and a few cakes on the table.

- A. is B. are C. has D. have

【解析】A。题意:桌子上有一些牛奶,两个鸡蛋和几块蛋糕。此句为 there be 句型,be 动词遵循就近原则,milk 为不可数名词,应用 be 动词的单数形式,排除 B 项,C、D 两项没有此用法,故 A 符合题意。

真题回放

(2009·山西)

—When did your uncle _____ in Shanghai?

—The day before yesterday.

- A. arrive B. get C. reach

【解析】A。题意:“你叔叔什么时候到上海的?”“前天。”这三个单词都有“到达”的意思;get 后要加 to;reach 后直接加地点;arrive 后接大地方时用介词 in,接小地方时要用介词 at。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- They often go to the park _____.
A. take a taxi B. by taxi
C. take taxi D. by a taxi
- _____ can I get to the post office?
— Go down this road and turn right.
A. Where B. What C. How D. Why
- Hyde Park is a great place to _____ fun.
A. make B. have C. go D. take
- Could you tell me the way _____ Green Hotel?
A. to B. at C. on D. in
- It's a _____ street. Don't throw litter (垃圾) everywhere.
A. busy B. small C. quiet D. clean
- Is there a shop?
— No, _____.
A. this is not B. there isn't
C. it isn't D. there aren't
- Go up the street and turn _____ the right, the post office is _____ the left.
A. to; at B. to; to C. to; on D. /; on
- _____
— You are welcome.
A. Can you help me? B. I'm sorry I'm late.
C. Thanks a lot. D. Excuse me.
- When the bus _____, I can tell you.
A. gets B. arrives C. gets in D. arrives in
- There _____ a big zoo and two parks in the city.
A. am B. are C. is D. be
- Let's go to Beijing to _____ the Great Wall (长城).
A. watch B. visit C. go D. have
- _____. Could you tell me where the park is, please?
A. Sorry B. Excuse me
C. No D. Yes
- Our school is _____ a bank.
A. next B. next to
C. between D. between and
- Where is the bank?
— It's _____ the supermarket and the post office.
A. among B. from C. on D. between
- They live on the _____ floor.
A. five B. fiveth C. fifth D. fifty

II. 完形填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Welcome to Guangming Street. Guangming Street is a great place to enjoy 1. There are 2 stores on it. It

is a very 3 street. If you want to 4, you can go to the video arcade. It is 5 from the big supermarket. There is also a new park 6 the supermarket. It is 7 and quiet. You can 8 your lunch in it. If you want to see 9, you can go to the movie house. It is 10 the market and the park.

- A. yourself B. you C. your D. him
- A. lot of B. a lot C. a lot of D. much
- A. quiet B. dirty C. busy D. clean
- A. have lunch B. play games
C. buy clothes D. find a friend
- A. across B. next C. between D. in
- A. neighborhood B. near
C. on D. in neighborhood
- A. clean B. busy C. dirty D. noisy
- A. enjoy B. buy C. make D. drink
- A. books B. games C. movies D. matches
- A. down B. between C. through D. among

III. 阅读理解 (共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

A

Mrs White lives on Main Street now. She wants to send a postcard (寄贺卡) to her friend in Los Angeles, but she doesn't know where the post office is. "Where can I find a post office?" she asks her new neighbor, Jane. "I want to send a postcard to my friend."

"The post office is quite far (遥远的) from here," answers Jane. "If you only want to post some letters or postcards, you needn't go to the post office. You can put them into a mailbox at the street corner."

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

- Where does Mrs White want to go?
A. A post office. B. A friend's home.
C. A mailbox. D. A cinema.
- Who is in Los Angeles?
A. Her neighbor. B. Her family.
C. Her friend. D. Her classmates.
- What does she want to do in the post office?
A. She wants to send a postcard.
B. she wants to buy some stamps (邮票).
C. She wants to know the way to Los Angeles.
D. She wants to meet a friend.
- Where is the post office?
A. On Main Street. B. We don't know.
C. At the street corner. D. Near a school.
- Where can Mrs White post the postcard?
A. The post office.
B. The mailbox at the street corner.
C. The mailbox at the post office.
D. The cinema.

B

Bob comes out of the station and at first he doesn't know where to go. This is the first time he comes to this town. He comes to see his good friend, Peter. Peter is a worker. He works in a factory. But Bob doesn't know where the factory is.

He walks in the street. He passes a hospital, a post office, a bookshop and at last he gets to a school. Some students are coming out. He asks one of them, "Excuse me, do you know where the Red Star Factory is?"

"Of course, I know. I live near there. My father works in that factory. It's outside this town," answers the boy.

"I'm going home now. Will you go with me? I'll take you there."

"That's great! Thank you very much!"

"You're welcome. Then, let's go to that bus stop. We'll take a No. 1 bus there."

根据短文内容,回答下列问题。

6. What does Peter do?

7. Where does Bob want to go?

8. Before he gets to the school, how many places does he pass?

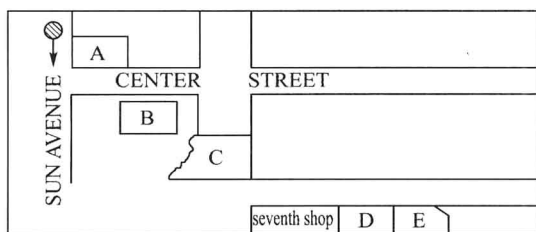
9. Is it time for the students to go to school or go home?

10. How do Bob and the students go to the factory?

IV. 阅读填空(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

Peter and Charly will go to the movie house. But Peter doesn't know the way. Charly writes the way on a piece of paper.

Walk straight the Sun Avenue until you see a restaurant. turn left and you are on the Center Street. You will go past a library. Then turn right. Go straight and you will see a park in front of you. Go through the park and turn left. After you pass the seventh shop, you will see a supermarket. The movie house is next to the supermarket. You can't miss(错过) it.



请写出图中标号地点的名称。

1. A _____ 2. B _____ 3. C _____
4. D _____ 5. E _____

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. Where's the _____ (饭店)?
2. Go _____ (通过) the park, you will see a big bank.
3. We have _____ (开心) playing computer games.
4. There is a _____ (图书馆) near my school.

5. Excuse me. Is the park _____ (在……附近) the school?
6. Tom wants to eat something because he is h _____ now.
7. The garden is just b _____ my house.
8. A _____ from the hotel, you can see the store.
9. W _____ to China.
10. There is a bank b _____ the library and the post office.

VI. 翻译填空(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

1. 这附近有银行吗?
Is there a bank _____ ?
2. 在这个公园的对过有一家超市。
A supermarket is _____ the park.
3. 图书馆在哪里?
_____ the _____ ?
4. 北京饭店在长安大街上吗?
_____ Beijing Hotel _____ Chang'an Street?
5. 向右转,你就会看见那家商店。
_____ , and you will see the shop.

VII. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

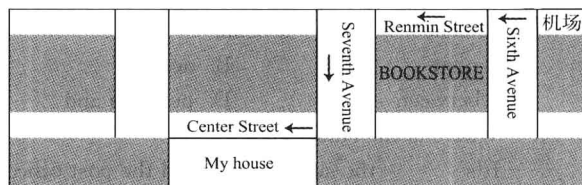
1. There are some children in the park. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ there _____ children in the park?
2. Green Hotel is behind Garden High School. (改为同义句)
Garden High School is _____ Green Hotel.
3. The library is on Black Street. (对划线部分提问)
_____ the library?
4. The supermarket is near a tree. (改为否定句)
The supermarket _____ near a tree.
5. He wants to go to Beijing this week. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ he _____ go to Beijing this week?

VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

你的一位英国朋友 Tom 下周要来看望你,你需要向他介绍一下去你家的线路。请你根据图片上的信息,写一篇短文。

要求:

1. 用上以下词语:
take a taxi, on your right, turn left, turn right, go down, on your left, go through
2. 60 词左右。



Unit 3

Why do you like koalas? 你为什么喜欢树袋熊?

A
部
分

Language Goals: Describe animals; Express preferences

语言目标: 描述动物; 表达喜好



英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Match the words with the animals in the picture.

将单词与图片中的动物联系起来。

- | | | | |
|---------------|---|----------------|-------|
| 1. tiger 老虎 | b | 2. elephant 大象 | _____ |
| 3. koala 树袋熊 | | 4. dolphin 海豚 | _____ |
| 5. panda 大熊猫 | ✓ | 6. lion 狮子 | _____ |
| 7. penguin 企鹅 | | 8. giraffe 长颈鹿 | _____ |

WELCOME TO THE ZOO. 欢迎来到动物园。 MAP 地图

Let's see the pandas first.
我们先看大熊猫吧。



Why?
为什么?

Because they're very cute.
因为它们非常可爱。

- koala [kəʊ'ɑ:lə] n. (澳洲)树袋熊; 考拉
- animal ['ænɪmə] n. 动物
- elephant ['elɪfənt] n. 大象
- dolphin ['dɒ:lfin], ['dɒlfɪn] n. 海豚
- panda ['pændə] n. 熊猫
- penguin ['peŋgwɪn] n. 企鹅
- giraffe [dʒɪ'ræf, dʒɪ'rɑ:f] n. 长颈鹿
- zoo [zu:] n. 动物园
- tiger ['tɪgə(r)] n. 老虎; 虎
- lion ['laɪən] n. 狮子
- map [mæp] n. 地图; 图

本页生词



考点注释

Section A

1 map n. [C]地图; 图

The place is not on our map. 我们的地图上找不到这个地方。

This is a map of China. 这是一幅中国地图。

搭配 a map of China/the world 中国/世界地图

on the map 在地图上

Can you find our country on the map? 在这幅地图上你能找到我们国家吗?

2 本句是一个 Let's do... 祈使句, 意为“让我们……吧。”

Let's go and watch TV! 咱们去看电视吧!

Let's talk about this problem. 让我们讨论一下这个问题吧。

提醒 Let's 和 Let us 有区别; 请点击下框“妙辨异同”仔细体会它们的不同。

你现在能够明确 Let's 和 Let us 的区别了吗? 请点击下框“图解助记”加深记忆。

非常点拨

妙辨异同

Let's, Let us

Let's 意为“让我们……”, 包括说话对方在内。

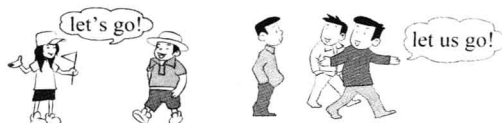
Let us 意为“让我们……”, 不包括说话对方在内。

Let's go, shall we? 我们一起走吧, 好吗?

Let us go, will you? 让我们走吧, 好吗?

图解

助记 Let's, Let us



1b Listen and check (✓) the animals in 1a you hear.

听录音,并在 1a 中标出(✓)你所听到的动物。

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Then make conversations about the other animals in the picture. Use the words in the box.^⑧
练习下面的对话。然后编写有关图片中其他动物的对话。

animals in the picture. Use the words in the box.^⑧

使用框中的单词。

cute ^⑧ 可爱的	interesting 有趣的	fun 好玩的	smart 聪明的
---------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------	---------------------

A: Let's see the lions.

我们去看狮子吧。

B: Why do you want to see the lions?^⑨

你为什么想看狮子呢?

A: Because they're cute.

因为它们可爱。

2a Listen and write the animals you hear. Draw a line from the animals to the

听并写下你听到的动物。在动物与描述性单词间画线。

description words.

Animals 动物	Description Words 描述性单词
1. _____	a. interesting 有趣的
2. _____	b. cute 可爱的
	c. fun 好玩的
	d. smart 聪明的

2b Listen again and complete the conversation with the words in the box. (You

再听一遍并且用方框中的单词完成对话。

can use some words more than once.)

(有些词可重复使用。)

very 非常	dolphins 海豚	kind of ^⑩ 有几分	koalas 树袋熊
-------------------	-----------------------	------------------------------------	----------------------

- **box** [bɑ:ks], [bɒks] *n.* 方框; 盒; 箱
- **cute** [kjʊ:t] *adj.* 可爱的; 聪明的
- **smart** [smɑ:(r)t] *adj.* 聪明的; 漂亮的
- **kind of** 有几分

③ **box** *n.* [C] 方框; 盒; 箱

Write the correct answers in the box.
在方框中写下正确答案。

They are carrying the boxes. 他们正在搬运箱子。

搭配 a box of 一盒/箱

拓展 box *v.* 拳击



如何记忆 box 的一词多义? 请点击下框“巧学助记”。

④ **cute** *adj.* 可爱的; 聪明的

What a cute little baby! 多么可爱的小宝宝!

She is a cute girl. 她是个聪明的女孩。

提示 口语中 cute 比 pretty 更常用, 而且指人可爱时, 不分男女皆可使用。

⑤ **why** 引导的特殊疑问句用来询问做某事的原因, why 作疑问副词, 意为“为什么”, 通常用 because 引导的句子回答。

—Why do you like to go there? 你为什么喜欢去那儿?

—Because there are many animals. 因为那里有很多动物。

—Why are you so happy? 你为什么这么高兴?

—Because I get the first prize for running. 因为我跑步得了第一名。

⑥ **kind of** 有几分

The tiger is kind of dangerous. 老虎有点危险。

I feel kind of cold. 我感到有点冷。

▲ kind of 用来修饰形容词, 常用于口语。

联想 a kind of 某种

提示 请点击下框“妙辨异同”, 明确 kind of 与 a kind of 的区别。

参考答案

- 1a 1. b 2. h 3. d 4. a
5. e 6. f 7. g 8. c
- 1b panda, giraffe, penguin
- 2a 1. koalas—cute
2. dolphins—interesting
- 2b (1) koalas (2) koalas
(3) very (4) dolphins
(5) dolphins (6) kind of

非常点拨

巧学助记

巧记 box 的一词多义

❖ Strangely, he practises **boxing** with a heavy **box** on his back. 奇怪的是他背着一个重箱子练拳击。

妙辨异同

kind of, a kind of

kind of “有几分”, 修饰形容词。

a kind of “一种”, 修饰名词。

It's kind of late. 天有点晚了。

There is a kind of snake in this area. 这个地区有一种蛇。

Julia: Let's see the koalas ⁽¹⁾.

朱莉: 我们看树袋熊吧。

Henry: Why do you like giraffes ⁽²⁾?

亨利: 你为什么喜欢 长颈鹿?

Julia: Because they're very ⁽³⁾ cute.

朱莉: 因为它们 非常 可爱。

Henry: Well, I like koalas ⁽⁴⁾.

亨利: 啊, 我喜欢 树袋熊。

Julia: Why do you like koalas ⁽⁵⁾?

朱莉: 你为什么喜欢 树袋熊?

Henry: Because they're kind of ⁽⁶⁾ interesting.

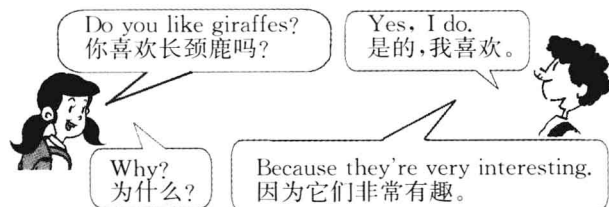
亨利: 因为它们 有点 有趣。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Do you like these animals? Why or why not? Ask and answer questions. Use the words from the boxes.

提问并回答。利用方框中的单词。

Box 1 方框 1	Box 2 方框 2	Box 3 方框 3
tigers dolphins penguins 老虎 海豚 企鹅	kind of 有几分	cute 可爱的
elephants pandas giraffes 大象 大熊猫 长颈鹿	very 非常	interesting 有趣的
koalas lions 树袋熊 狮子		smart 聪明的

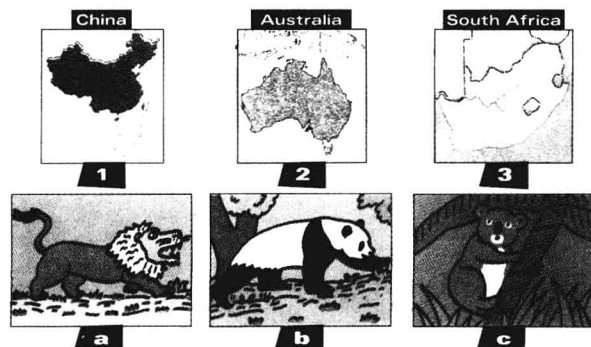


Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Why do you like pandas? 你为什么喜欢大熊猫?	Because they're very cute. 因为它们非常可爱。
Why does he like koalas? 他为什么喜欢树袋熊?	Because they're kind of interesting. 因为它们挺逗的。

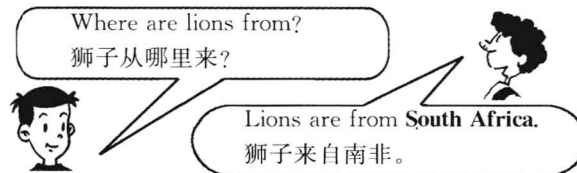
3a Match the animals with the countries.

将动物与国家联系起来。



3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation on the right. Use the animals and countries in 3a.



4 GAME 游戏 Bingo 宾戈

Write nine of these words in the squares below. Then listen and cross out (X) the words you hear. Say BINGO when you get a row of Xs. The first person to get a row of Xs in any direction is the winner.

penguins 企鹅	Africa 非洲			
dolphins 海豚	elephants 大象			
China 中国	lions 狮子			
koalas 树袋熊	Japan 日本			
pandas 大熊猫	tigers 老虎			
Australia 澳大利亚	giraffes 长颈鹿			

参考答案

- 2c 1. A: Do you like tigers?
B: No, I don't.
A: Why?
B: Because they are not very cute.
- 2. A: Do you like pandas?
B: Yes, I do.
A: Why?
B: Because they are kind of interesting.
- 3. A: Do you like Koalas?
B: Yes, I do.
A: Why?
B: Because they are smart.

- 3a China—panda
Australia—koalas
South Africa—lion



- south [saʊθ] n. 南; 南方 adj. 在南方的; 南部的; 向南的
- Africa [ˈæfrɪkə] n. 非洲
- bingo [ˈbɪŋɡəʊ] n. 宾戈(一种游戏)



Section B

B部分

1 Match the description words with the animals.

将描述性单词与动物联系起来。

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|----------|---------------------|
| 1. ugly b | 3. friendly ^② | 5. small | 7. shy ^③ |
| 丑陋的 | 友好的 | 小的 | 害羞的 |
| 2. clever ^① | 4. beautiful ^④ | 6. cute | 8. scary |
| 聪明的 | 美丽的 | 可爱的 | 吓人的 |



2a Listen and circle the description words you hear in 1.

听录音并且圈出你听见的 1 中的描述性单词。

2b Listen again. What words do they use to describe the animals? Fill in the chart.

再听一次。他们用什么词描述这些动物?

填写表格。

Animal
动物

Maria's Words
玛丽亚的单词

Tony's Words
托尼的单词

elephants
大象
pandas
大熊猫

3 PAIRWORK 结对活动

Talk about the animals you know.

谈论你所知道的动物。

A: What animals do you like?

你喜欢什么动物?

B: I like elephants. They're cute.

我喜欢大象。它们可爱。

A: What other^⑤ animals do you like?

你喜欢什么别的动物?

- ugly ['ʌɡli] *adj.* 丑陋的; 难看的
- clever ['klevə(r)] *adj.* 聪明的; 机灵的
- friendly ['frendli] *adj.* 友好的
- shy [ʃaɪ] *adj.* 害羞的; 羞怯的
- other ['ʌðə(r)] *adj.* 其他的; 另外的
- beautiful ['bjʊtɪfəl] *adj.* 美丽的; 美好的

Section B

① clever *adj.* 聪明的; 机灵的; 擅长的

You are clever to do it like that. 你那样做真聪明。

She is clever with her fingers. 她手指灵巧。

He is clever at English. 他英语学得好。

搭配 be clever with/at (在某方面) 擅长

拓展 silly *adj.* 傻的, 愚蠢的

② friendly *adj.* 友好的, 亲切的

That's not very friendly of you. 你不太友好。

The big boy isn't friendly to Tom. 那个大男孩对汤姆不友好。

搭配 be friendly to sb. 对某人友好
in a friendly way 友好地

你还知道哪些以-ly 结尾的形容词?
请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

③ beautiful *adj.* 美丽的; 美好的

Our hometown is very beautiful. 我们的家乡非常美丽。

It's a very beautiful day. 这是美好的一天。

联想 ugly *adj.* 丑陋的; 难看的

④ shy *adj.* 害羞的; 羞怯的; 胆怯的

He is a shy student. 他是个害羞的学生。

Deer are very shy animals. 鹿是胆怯的动物。

搭配 feel shy 感到害羞

⑤ other *adj.* 其他的; 另外的

There are some other people waiting to see you. 还有另外一些人等着要见你。

He goes to the other side of the street. 他走到街的另一边去。

提醒 other 和 others 形近意不同, 请下框“妙辨异同”。

参考答案

- 1 1. b 2. h 3. g 4. e
5. d 6. f 7. c 8. a
- 2a clever, ugly, cute, beautiful, shy
- 2b Maria's Words interesting clever
beautiful shy
Tony's Words ugly cute
- 3 A: What animals do you like?
B: I like dolphins. They are intelligent and friendly.
A: What other animals do you like?
B: I like lions and tigers, too.
A: Why?
B: Because they're big and strong.

非常点拨

归纳拓展

名词+ly 构成的形容词

- friendly 友好的
- fatherly 父亲般的
- brotherly 兄弟般的
- weekly 每周的
- lovely 可爱的
- motherly 母亲般的
- womanly 像女人的
- monthly 每月的

妙辨异同

other, others

other 意为“其余的; 其余的人(物)”, 可用做形容词, 后接名词单复数均可; 也可用做代词。

others 意为“其他的人(物或事等)”, 只能作代词, 常用来泛指。

B: I like dogs, too.
我也喜欢狗。

A: Why?
为什么?

B: Because they're friendly and clever.
因为它们友好而聪明。

3a Read the descriptions and match them with the animals.

阅读描述,然后把它们与动物联系起来。

1.

Molly 莫莉

This is Molly. She is twelve years old. She is from Africa. She likes this is Molly. 她十二岁。她来自非洲。她喜欢 to play with her friends and eat grass. 与朋友们玩耍、吃草。

2.

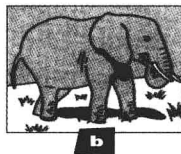
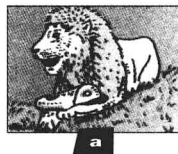
Ling Ling 玲玲

This is Ling Ling. She's five years old. She's from China. She's very beautiful, but she's very shy, so please be very quiet. 这是玲玲。她五岁。她来自中国。她非常漂亮,但是却很害羞,因此请保持安静。

3.

Bill 比尔

This is Bill. Isn't he cute? He is from Australia. He sleeps during the day, but at night he gets up and eats leaves. 这是比尔。他可爱吧?他来自澳大利亚。他白天睡觉,但是晚上起来吃叶子。



3b Look at the lion in 3a. Then fill in the blanks with the words in the box.

看 3a 中的狮子。然后用方框中的单词填空。

- grass [græs], [grɑ:s] n. 草
- sleep [slip] v. 睡;睡觉
- during ['dɔ:ɪŋ], ['dʒu:ɪŋ] prep. 在……期间
- at night 在晚上;在夜里
- leaf [li:f] n. 叶子;树叶



⑥ sleep v. 睡;睡觉

- ▶ Please be quiet! The baby is sleeping now. 安静点!孩子正在睡觉。
- ▶ I sleep eight hours every day. 我每天睡八小时。

搭配 go to sleep 入睡

- ▶ It's time to go to sleep. 到了睡觉的时间了。

sleep 与 go to bed 和 go to sleep 有何区别?请点击下框“一言辨异”。

⑦ during prep. 在……期间

- ▶ The shop is closed during the day. 这个商店白天关门。
- ▶ The child often wakes during the night. 这个孩子夜里常常醒来。
- ▶ He often comes to see me during my illness. 我生病的时候他常来看我。

during 和 for 都可以与表示一段时间的状语连用,两者有何区别?请点击下框“一言辨异”。

⑧ at night 在晚上;在夜里

- ▶ Close the windows at night. 晚上要关上窗户。
- ▶ Don't sing loudly at night. 夜晚不要大声唱歌。

联想 at noon 在上午
in the morning 在早上
in the day 在白天

⑨ leaf n. [C] 叶子;树叶

- ▶ In autumn the leaves turn brown. 秋天树叶变成了黄褐色。
- ▶ There is a green leaf on the table. 桌子上有一片绿叶。

leaves 为 leaf 的复数形式。英语中以 f, fe 结尾的名词变复数的时候,通常是将 f, fe 变为 v, 再在后面加上 -es。

拓展类似 leaf 变复数的单词还有: half (一半,半数), self (自己), wife (妻子), knife (刀子), shelf (架,架子), wolf (狼), thief (强盗), life (生命)。

参考答案

- 3a 1. elephant (b)
- 2. panda (d)
- 3. koalas (c)

非常点拨



一言辨异

Every day I sleep eight hours. I often go to bed at nine, and go to sleep at ten. 我每天睡 8 小时。通常我 9 点上床睡觉,10 点入睡。

—sleep 表示“睡眠”的持续状态;go to bed 表示“上床”,与 get up“起床”相对,强调动作;go to sleep 表示“入睡”,与 wake (up)“醒来”相对,二者均表示瞬间动作。



一言辨异

It snowed for the whole day but stopped snowing during the night. 雪下了一整天,但晚上的时候停了。

—for 表示某个动作在某个时期里处于连续不断的状态;during 意为“当……之际”,既可指某个动作在某个时期里连续不断地进行,也可指某个动作在这段时期里的某个时间发生。

Africa years ✓ this eats sleeps lazy ⑩
非洲 岁 这 吃 睡觉 懒惰的

This ⁽¹⁾ is Larry. He's from ⁽²⁾. He is eight ⁽³⁾ old. He 这是拉里。他来自。他八了。他 ⁽⁴⁾ meat ⑩. Larry is ⁽⁵⁾. He usually ⁽⁶⁾ and relaxes ⑩ 20 hours 肉。拉里。他通常,而且每天放松二十个小时! every day ⑩!

3c Write a description of another animal.

描述另一种动物。

4 GROUPWORK 小组活动

Exchange your description with other students. Can they guess the animal?
与其他同学交换你的描述。他们能猜出这种动物吗?



Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> panda | <input type="checkbox"/> koalas | <input type="checkbox"/> giraffe | <input type="checkbox"/> lion | <input type="checkbox"/> tiger |
| 熊猫 | 树袋熊 | 长颈鹿 | 狮子 | 老虎 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> dolphin | <input type="checkbox"/> penguin | <input type="checkbox"/> elephant | <input type="checkbox"/> cute | <input type="checkbox"/> friendly |
| 海豚 | 企鹅 | 大象 | 可爱的 | 友好的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> ugly | <input type="checkbox"/> clever | <input type="checkbox"/> beautiful | <input type="checkbox"/> shy | <input type="checkbox"/> smart |
| 丑陋的 | 聪明的 | 漂亮的 | 害羞的 | 聪明的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Australia | <input type="checkbox"/> China | <input type="checkbox"/> Africa | <input type="checkbox"/> kind of | <input type="checkbox"/> very |
| 澳大利亚 | 中国 | 非洲 | 有点 | 非常 |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

- lazy ['leɪzi] adj. 懒惰的; 懒散的
- meat [mi:t] n. (食用)肉; 肉类
- relax [rɪ'læks] v. 放松; 休息

⑩ lazy adj. 懒惰的; 懒散的

▶ Lazy people won't succeed. 懒惰的人不会成功。
▶ Don't be so lazy. 不要这么懒。

拓展 lazily adv. 懒惰地
laziness n. 懒惰

⑪ meat n. [U](食用)肉; 肉类

▶ What kind of meat do you like best? 你最喜欢吃什么肉?
▶ The dog eats the meat. 狗吃肉。

▲ meat 表示食用肉,但不包括鱼肉和鸟肉。

搭配 fresh meat 鲜肉

提示 请点击下框“归类卡片”来总结记忆一下与肉有关的词汇吧。

⑫ relax v. 放松; 休息

▶ The music will help to relax you. 音乐会使你感到轻松。
▶ Let's relax for 20 minutes. 让我们休息20分钟吧!

▲ relax 第三人称单数形式应在词尾加-es。

拓展 relaxed adj. 放松的; 随意的
relaxing adj. 令人轻松的

▶ The relaxing music can make us relaxed. 这种令人轻松的音乐可以让我们放松。

你想知道 relaxed 和 relaxing 的区别吗? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

⑬ every day “每天”,在句中作时间状语。

▶ He drinks a cup of milk every day. 他每天喝一杯牛奶。
▶ I do my homework every day. 我每天都做作业。

提示 everyday 是形容词“每天的,日常的”; every day“每天”,是时间状语。

❖ She keeps learning some everyday English every day. 她坚持每天学一些日常英语。

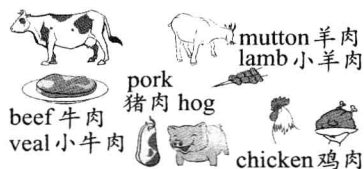
参考答案

- 3b (1) This (2) Africa
- (3) years (4) eats
- (5) lazy (6) sleeps

非常点拨

• 归类卡片

肉之种种



妙辨异同

relaxing, relaxed

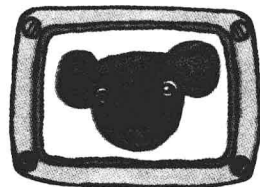
relaxing 意为“令人轻松的”,常用来修饰事物,表示事物本身的特性。

relaxed 意为“轻松的,随意的”,常用来修饰人,表示人的感受。

3 Look at the animals and write about them.
看这些动物并且描述它们。



This is Victor.
这是维克托。
He is an elephant.
他是一头大象。
He's friendly and quiet.
他非常友好而且安静。



4 Make two more animals in the frames and write about them.
在方框中再画两个动物。
然后描述它们。

语法在线

Why 引导的特殊疑问句

1. 特殊疑问句由特殊疑问词加一般疑问句构成：“Why + 助动词 + sb. + do. . . ?”或“Why + be + sb. + adj. . . ?”，回答时一般用 because 引出的句子，所叙述的理由是该事或该动作的直接原因。

- ▶ —Why does Tony know so much about space travel? 为什么托尼对太空旅行了解这么多?
—Because he reads many books on it. 因为他读了很多这方面的书。
- ▶ —Why are they so sad? 他们为什么那么难过?
—Because they fail the exam. 因为他们考试不及格。
- ▶ —Why do you give me this picture? 你为什么给我这个图片?
—Because I want to show you the tree in it. 因为我想让你看看图片上的这棵树。

2. “Why don't/doesn't sb. do. . . ?”, “Why not do. . . ?”用来提出建议或劝告, 表示“为什么不……?”

- ▶ Why don't you/Why not ask him? 你为什么不去问问他?
- ▶ Why doesn't she play table tennis? 她为什么不打乒乓球?
- ▶ Why not go there with us? 为什么不和我们一起去?
- ▶ Why not write to him? 为什么不给他写信?

3. “Why + 动词. . . ?”意为“为什么要……/何必……?”, 暗示说话人认为不应该。

- ▶ Why trouble yourself with such a problem?
为什么要为这样的问题烦恼呢?
- ▶ Why spend so much money on computer games?
为什么要花那么多的钱在电脑游戏上面呢?
- ▶ Why put your hand into the glass?
为什么把你的手放进这个杯子里呢?

点击名题

1. —Why do you hope to visit Hawaii?
— it has beautiful beaches.
A. Though B. Or
C. Because D. So
【解析】题意：“你为什么希望去夏威夷啊?”“因为那里有美丽的海滩。”because “因为”，表示原因，常用于回答 why 的提问，符合题意。though“尽管”；or“或者”；so“因此”。
【答案】C
2. —Shall we play basketball this afternoon?
— I need to exercise very much.
A. Why not?
B. I agree with him.
C. You are lucky.
D. No, I don't want to.
【解析】题意：“今天下午我们打篮球吧?”“为什么不呢? 我非常需要锻炼。”Why not“为什么不”，表示同意，符合题意。I agree with him“我同意他的建议”；You are lucky“你很幸运”；No, I don't want to“不，我不想去”。
【答案】A
3. —It's cold outside.
—Why _____ stay at home?
A. not you B. not to C. not
【解析】题意：“外面很冷。”“为什么不呆在家里?” why not 表示提建议，意为“为什么不”，后面跟动词原形。
【答案】C

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·四川自贡)

—_____ do you like the Cool Kids?
—Because they look cool.
A. What B. How C. Why

【解析】C。题意：“你为什么喜欢酷孩子乐团?”“因为他们看起来很酷。”根据答语中的 because 可知，询问原因，故选 C。

真题回放

(2008·安徽芜湖)

He is an unpleasant man. I don't understand _____ she married him.
A. whether B. if C. why D. how

【解析】C。题意：他是一个令人讨厌的人。我不明白她为什么嫁给他。why“为什么”，引导宾语从句，在从句中作原因状语，符合题意。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- He works only _____.
A. at the night B. in night
C. at the evening D. at night
- I hear there are many animals in the park. Let's go to the zoo.
—_____.
A. Right B. That's all right
C. That's right D. All right
- Mary with her mother often _____ to the zoo on Saturdays.
A. go B. goes C. to go D. going
- What _____ do you like?
—I like elephants.
A. animals B. sports C. books D. places
- Why not go swimming tomorrow?
—_____.
A. Yes, you are right B. That's all right
C. Good idea D. You are welcome
- She has a lot of homework _____. That is _____ she doesn't go to the zoo.
A. to do; because B. do; why
C. to do; why D. do; because
- Tigers like eating _____.
A. grass B. meat C. bananas D. leaves
- Many people like pandas _____ they are beautiful and smart.
—You are right.
A. why B. because C. so D. for
- There is _____ elephant and _____ tiger in the picture.
A. a; an B. an; a C. a; a D. a; an
- I don't like the black bears, because they're _____.
A. beautiful B. smart
C. interesting D. ugly
- How long do you _____ every day?
—For about nine hours.
A. sleep B. go to bed
C. be asleep D. asleep
- _____ do you like dogs?
—Because they're very cute.
A. What B. How C. Why D. Where
- What about _____ TV?

- watch B. to watch C. watching D. watches
- Chinese people are very _____.
A. friend B. friends C. friendly D. friendly
- Why do you feel _____ nervous in the zoo?
—Because there are many _____ dangerous animals in it.
A. kind of; kind of B. kinds of; kinds of
C. kind of; kinds of D. kinds of; kind of

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

There are many different kinds of animals on the earth (在地球上). We can see 1 of them in a zoo. Koalas come 2 Australia. They are quiet, friendly and cute. Children like them. They need a 3 for a home. Penguins come from 4. Penguins are quiet and interesting, 5 they are not friendly. Giraffes come from Africa. They are interesting 6 exciting. They need a big home. Lions 7 also from Africa. They are exciting but scary. Tigers come from India and China. They are exciting and scary, too. Lions and tigers need a large place 8 live in. Pandas are from China. They're cute and friendly. They 9 need a big home. 10 are also other animals in a zoo, like bears, monkeys, deer, camels and so on.

- A. some B. any C. every D. much
- A. to B. from C. of D. for
- A. grass B. leaves C. tree D. bed
- A. Africa B. the South Pole
C. China D. Australia
- A. and B. but C. or D. so
- A. or B. but C. and D. then
- A. comes B. are C. is D. coming
- A. at B. to C. of D. from
- A. can't B. doesn't C. don't D. aren't
- A. They B. Have C. Here D. There

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

There's a special kind of dog. They're like the eyes of blind people. We call them "seeing eye dogs".

These dogs are trained (训练) for several months. Then they live with a blind person. Their job is very important. They help blind people walk around a



city.

Seeing eye dogs know how to cross the street. They can wait for a green light. They can also avoid(避免) danger, like cars, bikes and holes in the road.

Sometimes you may see these dogs with their owners. Like most dogs, seeing eye dogs are often cute. You should not pet them. Remember, they are working hard.

- What is the main idea?
 - Seeing eye dogs are cute.
 - All blind people have seeing eye dogs.
 - Seeing eye dogs help blind people a lot.
 - Streets are full of danger.
- Seeing eye dogs _____.
 - are blind
 - cannot cross the street
 - are trained to do their job
 - don't usually avoid danger
- Which city danger is not talked about?
 - Crimes.
 - Bikes.
 - Cars.
 - Holes in the road.
- When will the dogs cross the street?
 - At any time.
 - When there are cars in the street.
 - They never cross the street.
 - When the light is green.
- Which of these sentences is TRUE?
 - All blind people have seeing eye dogs.
 - In the street, blind people have many dangers to avoid.
 - It's fine to pet seeing eye dogs.
 - There is no safe way to cross the street.

B

Many people have pets(宠物). Some people like rabbits very much. They have pet rabbits.



Mr Trotter is a doctor, but he doesn't help sick people, he helps rabbits. People call him 'The Rabbit Doctor'. When their pet rabbits get sick, they give him a telephone. And Mr Trotter drives his car to the people's houses. In the car, Mr Trotter has medicine to help the sick rabbits to get well.

Wherever(无论哪里) he goes, he is always welcome.

- "Trotter" is a _____.
 - rabbit
 - dog
 - man
 - doctor
- Mr Trotter goes to people's houses by _____.
 - bus
 - car
 - bike
 - boat
- People telephone Mr Trotter when _____.
 - they are sick
 - their children are sick
 - their pet rabbits are sick
 - they are happy

9. Mr Trotter give _____ to the sick rabbits.

- medicine
- sugar
- pet
- water

10. The underlined word "welcome" in the last line means _____.

- 欢迎
- 高兴的
- 受欢迎的
- 喜欢的

IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据短文内容简要回答问题。

Pandas are endangered(濒危的) animals—there are only about 1 000 pandas left(剩下) in the world.



Lots of pandas live in bamboo forests high up in the mountains of western China. When people build more cities and farms, they destroy(破坏) the pandas' homes. Also, these animals do not have babies very often, and that is why there are so few of them left in the wild.

Pandas love to eat bamboo shoots(竹笋), but sometimes they eat small animals as well. They can live to about 30—35 years old. Young pandas are really small. And they can't see anything, so they need their parents to help them live.

1. What's the name of the animal?

2. Why are they endangered?

3. How many pandas left in the world?

4. What do the pandas eat?

5. Where do the pandas live?

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. I like dolphins. They are _____(友好的) to people.

2. The old lion has an _____(丑陋的) face. We are afraid of it.

3. Koalas come from _____(非洲).

4. Don't _____(睡觉) in class. Keep awake and listen to me carefully, please.

5. There are many _____(动物) in the zoo.

6. Henry doesn't do his homework. He is very l_____.

7. Molly is a s_____ girl. Look! She is behind her mother.

8. They swim every day d_____ the holidays.

9. Don't worry about it, just try to r_____.

10. The g_____ is very tall. It has a long neck.

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. Lily and Mary are friends. (改为同义句)

Lily and Mary _____ to each other(彼此).

2. I like dolphins best of all the animals. (改为同义句)

My _____ is dolphins.

3. My brother eats apples every week. (改为否定句)

My brother _____ apples _____ week.

4. I like pandas because they are interesting. (对划线部分提问)

_____ do you _____ pandas?

5. He usually gets up and eats leaves at night. (对划线部分提问)

_____ does he usually _____ at night?

Ⅶ. 补全对话(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

从方框中选择最恰当的选项完成下列对话,并将答案写在相应的横线上,方框中有两个选项是多余的。

- A. I like koala bears.
 B. I like elephants.
 C. It's my favorite animal, too.
 D. Where are you going?
 E. They're from Australia.
 F. Let's go and see a tiger.
 G. It sounds great.

A: Hi, Peter! 1

B: I'm going to the zoo.

A: 2 What animal do you like?

B: 3

A: Why?

B: Because they're strong and intelligent. What about you?

A: 4 Because they're cute.

B: Where are the koala bears from?

A: Oh. 5

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

Ⅷ. 书面表达(满分15分)

动物园里新来了两只动物,请你根据下表中的提示对它们进行描述,60词左右。

Name	From	Food	Description(描述) words	Age
Pan Pan (panda)	China	bamboo	cute, shy	three
Molly (tiger)	Africa	meat	strong, dangerous	five

学 法 指 导

兴趣是最好的老师,同学们应该不断培养对英语学习的兴趣。遗憾的是许多同学甚至因为不喜欢自己学校的英语老师就放弃了英语学习,这种极端的行为是极其错误的。而一旦同学们发现英语语言本身承载了人类的智慧和当代最及时的信息之后,我们学习起来自然不带扬鞭自奋蹄。当你真正全心投入来体味英语的美好时,26个字母看起来就不那么面目可憎了。

Unit 4

I want to be an actor. 我想成为一名演员。

Language Goal: Talk about jobs

语言目标: 谈论工作



英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Match the words with the people in the picture.

把单词与图片中的人物联系起来。

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. shop ^① assistant f | 2. doctor ^② _____ | 3. actor _____ |
| 售货员 | 医生 | 演员 |
| 4. reporter _____ | 5. policeman _____ | 6. waiter _____ |
| 记者 | 警察 | 侍者 |
| 7. bank clerk _____ | 8. student _____ | |
| 银行职员 | 学生 | |

My uncle works in that restaurant.
我叔叔在那家餐馆里工作。



He's a waiter.
他是一名侍者。

Oh, what does he do?
啊,他是干什么的?



- **shop** [ʃɑ:p], [ʃɒp] *n.* 商店; 店铺
- **shop assistant** 店员
- **reporter** [rɪ'pɔ:(r)tə(r)] *n.* 记者; 通讯员
- **policeman** [pə'li:smən] *n.* 男警察
- **waiter** ['weɪtə(r)] *n.* 侍者; 服务员
- **bank clerk** 银行职员
- **assistant** [ə'sɪstənt] *n.* 助手; 助理
- **doctor** ['dɑ:ktər], ['dɒktə] *n.* 医生

本页生词



考点注释

Section A

① **shop** *n.* [C] 商店; 店铺

I bought a knife from the shop. 我从商店买了一把小刀。

There is a shop in this street. 在这条街上有一家商店。

拓展 **shop** *vi.* 买东西; 购物

Let's go shopping this afternoon. 今天下午我们去购物吧。

搭配 **open a shop** 开店

shop (at...) for sth. (在……) 买东西

go shopping/do some shopping 买东西

如何记忆 **shop** 的一词多义? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

② **doctor** *n.* [C] 医生

Mary's father is a doctor. 玛丽的父亲是一位医生。

If you are ill, go to see a doctor. 如果你病了, 应该去看医生。

搭配 **see a doctor** 看医生, 就诊

拓展 **doctor** *n.* 博士

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”, 学习 **doctor** 的一词多义。

参考答案

- 1a 1. f 2. b 3. h 4. c
5. a 6. d 7. e 8. g

非常点拨



图解

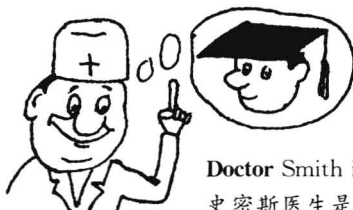
助记 **doctor** 的一词多义



一言辨异

I often **shop** for new coats in the **shops** in this street. 我常常在这条街的商店里买新衣服。

——第一个 **shop** 是动词“买东西, 购物”; 第二个 **shop** 是名词“商店”。



Doctor Smith is a **doctor**.
史密斯医生是位博士。

- 1b Listen and number the people [1-3] in the picture above.
听录音并给上面图片里的人编号[1-3]。

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Then ask and answer questions about the other people in the picture.
练习下面的对话。然后就图片里的其他人提问并回答。

A: What does she do?^⑥
她是干什么的?

B: She's a doctor.
她是位医生。

- 2a Listen and number the pictures [1-3].
听录音并给图片编号[1-3]。



- 2b Listen again and fill in the chart.
再听一遍并且填表。

Who 谁	Job 工作	Wants to be ^⑥ 想当
1. Anna's mother 安娜的母亲	bank clerk 银行职员	
2. Tony's father 托尼的父亲		
3. Susan's brother 苏珊的兄弟		

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions about the pictures in 2a.
就 2a 中的图片提问并回答。

What does Anna's mother do?
安娜的母亲是干什么的?

She's a bank clerk.
她是一位银行职员。



What does Anna's mother want to be?
安娜的母亲想当什么?

She wants to be a policewoman.^⑥
她想当一名女警察。

• policewoman [pə'li:swʊmən] n. 女警察

- ③ “What does she do? 她是做什么工作的?”该句型用来询问某人的职业。

—What do you do? 你是干什么的?

—I'm a reporter. 我是一名记者。

—What does your aunt do? 你阿姨是做什么的?

—She is a teacher. 她是一名教师。

- ④ want to be 意为“想要……/想要成为……”, to be 为 want 的宾语, be 后跟形容词或名词。

—I want to be happy. 我想要快乐一点。

—What do you want to be? 你想成为什么?

—I want to be a good doctor. 我想成为一名优秀的医生。

- ⑤ policewoman/policeman n. [C] 女警察/男警察

—The man isn't a policeman. 这个人不是警察。

▲ policeman/policewoman 的复数形式变 man/woman 为复数, 即 policemen/policewomen。

拓展 police n. 警方; 警察

▲ police 是集体名词, 作主语时谓动词用复数形式。

—The police work hard. 警察工作很努力。

提示 两个以上的警察, 通常用 police, 如: a few police, six police。

两个或两个以下的警察通常用 policemen/policewomen, 如: one/a policeman/policewoman, two/three policemen/policewomen。

参考答案

- 1b Conversation 1: reporter
Conversation 2: doctor
Conversation 3: shop assistant
- 2a 3 1 2
- 2b Anna's mother: bank clerk
policewoman
Tony's father: waiter actor
Susan's brother: student doctor

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·四川泸州)

My name _____ Lucy. May I know your name?

A. am B. is C. are

【解析】B。题意: 我的名字叫露西, 我可以知道你的名字吗? 因为主语是 my name 是第三人称单数, 所以谓动词用 is。

真题回放

(2008·四川泸州)

— _____?

— I'm a policeman.

A. What do you do B. What do you want to do
C. What are you doing

【解析】A。题意: “你干什么工作啊?” “我是一名警察。” What do you do? 是用来提问职业的表达方法。What do you want to do? “你想干什么?”; What are you doing? “你正在干什么?”

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What do you do? 你是干什么的?	I'm a reporter. 我是一名记者。
What does he do? 他是干什么的?	He's a student. 他是一名学生。
What does she do? 她是干什么的?	She's a doctor. 她是一位医生。
What do you want to be? 你想当什么?	I want to be an actor. 我想当一名演员。
What does he want to be? 他想当什么?	He wants to be a bank clerk. 他想当一名银行职员。
What does she want to be? 她想当什么?	She wants to be a shop assistant. 她想当一名售货员。

3a Match the jobs with the people in the pictures.

将工作与图片中的人联系起来。

1. waiter 2. nurse 3. bank clerk 4. policeman 5. reporter
侍者 护士 银行职员 警察 记者



Bank

a I work with people and **money**⁹. People **give**⁷ me their money or **get**⁸ their money from me.
我的工作是与人打交道。人们把他们的钱给我或从我这里取钱。



Hospital

b I **wear**⁹ a white **uniform** and I help doctors. **Sometimes**¹⁰ I work **in** the day and sometimes at night.
我穿着白色工作服协助医生工作。我有时上白班。有时上夜班。



TV Station

c I like **talking** to people. I meet interesting people every day and ask them questions.
我喜欢与人交谈。我每天都和有趣的人接触，向他们提问题。

- nurse [nɜː(r)s] n. 护士
- give [ɡɪv] v. 给; 授予
- wear [weɪ], [weə] v. 穿; 戴
- uniform ['juːnɪfɔː(r)m] n. 制服
- sometimes ['sʌmtaɪmz] adv. 不时; 有时
- in [ɪn] prep. 在……期间; 在……之内
- hospital ['hɔːspɪtl], ['hɒspɪtl] n. 医院
- station ['steɪʃən] n. 车站; 局; 台 • TV station 电视台
- talk [tɔːk] v. 谈话; 谈论
- money ['mʌni] n. 钱; 金钱; 货币
- get [ɡet] v. 获得; 得到; 购买; 拿来

6 money n. [U] 钱; 金钱; 货币

- ▶ How much money do you have? 你有多少钱?
- ▶ They make a lot of money selling clothes. 他们卖衣服赚了很多钱。

▲ money 是不可数名词, 可以用 some, much, a little 等修饰。提问多少钱用 how much.

搭配 make money 赚钱
pocket money 零用钱

7 give v. 给; 授予

- ▶ Please give Jim this pen/give this pen to Jim. 请把这支钢笔给吉姆。
- ▶ Can you give me a job? 你能给我一份工作吗?

▲ give 后跟双宾语, give sb. sth. (= give sth. to sb.) “把某物给某人”。但当 sth. 用 it 代替时, 通常不说 give sb. it, 而用 give it to sb.

8 get v. 获得; 得到; 购买; 拿来

- ▶ Where do you get that job? 你是从哪儿得到那份工作的?
- ▶ Get the book from my desk. 去把我桌上的那本书拿来。

9 wear v. 穿; 戴

- ▶ Today our teacher wears a T-shirt. 老师今天穿着一件 T 恤衫。
- ▶ That boy wears a hat. 那个男孩戴了一顶帽子。

拓展 wear v. 留, 蓄

- ▶ She wears her hair short. 她留短发。

你想进一步记忆 wear 的一词多义吗? 请点击下框“图解助记”。

10 sometimes adv. 不时; 有时

- ▶ Sometimes we are busy but sometimes we are not. 我们有时忙有时不忙。
 - ▶ My father sometimes works on Sunday. 我父亲有时在星期日工作。
- 提示 请点击下框“妙辨异同”, 学习 sometimes 的形近词(组)。

参考答案

- 3a a. (3) bank clerk b. (2) nurse
c. (5) reporter d. (1) waiter
e. (4) policeman

图解

助记 wear 的一词多义



妙辨异同

sometimes 的形近词(组)

- sometimes
- some time
- some times
- some time

表示“有时, 间或”, 用来描述现在或过去常发生的事。
名词短语, 表示某一段时间。
名词短语, 表示“几次, 几倍”。
指某一个不明确的时间, 用过去时态、将来时态都可以。

非常点拨



d I work **late**^①. I'm very **busy**^② when people go **out**^③ to my work to be very late. 人们去餐馆吃饭时我很忙。
dinner.



e My work is interesting but kind of **dangerous**^④. **Thieves**^⑤ like me. 我的工作有趣,但是有些危险。小偷不喜欢我。

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation on the right. Use the jobs and places in 3a.
练习右边的对话。利用 3a 中的工作和地点。

Where does your sister work?
你姐姐在哪儿工作?

She works in a hospital.^⑥
她在医院里工作。



What does she do?
她是干什么的?



She's a doctor.
她是一名医生。

4 GAME 游戏 Guess the job! 猜工作!

Draw a picture of someone at work. Your classmates ask two questions and then guess the job.
画一张某人在工作的图画。你的同学提两个问题,然后猜出这个工作。

A: Does she work in a hospital?
她在医院工作吗?

B: No, she doesn't.
不,她不在医院工作。

C: Does she work late?
她工作到很晚吗?

B: Yes, she does.
是的,她工作到很晚。

Section B

B部分

1a Match the words with the pictures.

将单词与图片联系起来。

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>a</u> exciting
令人激动的 | 3. _____ busy
忙碌的 | 5. _____ difficult
困难的 |
| 2. _____ dangerous
危险的 | 4. _____ fun
有趣的 | 6. _____ boring
令人厌倦的 |



- **late** [leɪt] *adv.* 晚; 晚于通常时间
- **police** [pə'li:s] *n.* 警方; 警察
- **dangerous** ['deɪndʒərəs] *adj.* 危险的
- **out** [aʊt] *adv.* 在外; 向外
- **police station** 警察局
- **thief** [θi:f] *n.* 小偷; 贼



参考答案

- 1a 1. a 2. c 3. f
- 4. e 5. b 6. d

⑪ late *adv.* 晚; 晚于通常时间

▶ Sometimes he is late for school. 他有时上学迟到。

▶ She is five minutes late. 她晚了五分钟。

搭配 be late for sth. 做某事迟到

be late with sth. 迟做某事

拓展 lately *adv.* 近来, 最近

⑫ busy *adj.* 忙碌的, 繁忙的

▶ I'm busy. 我很忙。

▶ He is busy at work. 他忙于工作。

搭配 be busy with sth. 忙于做某事

be busy (in) doing sth. 忙于做某事。

⑬ go out 出走, 离开

▶ What nice weather! Why not go out for a walk? 天气多好啊, 为什么不出去散步?

▶ They are going out to Australia. 他们就要去澳大利亚了。

拓展 out *adv.* 在外; 向外

▶ He is out now. 他现在在外面。

▶ Don't look out of the window in class. 上课时不要看窗外。

搭配 out of 在……外, 向……外

⑭ dangerous *adj.* 危险的

▶ This lake is dangerous for swimmers. 在这个湖里游泳危险。

▶ Robots work in dangerous areas. 机器人在危险地带干活。

搭配 safe *adj.* 安全的

⑮ in a/the hospital 在医院里

▶ She works in a/the hospital. 她在医院里工作。

▶ He works in a hospital called ABC. 他在一个叫 ABC 的医院里工作。

提示 in hospital 指住院, 请点击下框“妙辨异同”, 看看它与 in a/the hospital 的差异吧。

非常点拨

真题回放

(2009·四川成都)

Peter is busy _____ at school, but he never forgets _____ exercise every day.

A. working; doing B. working; to do C. at work; doing

【解析】B。题意: 彼得在学校里很忙, 但是他每天都不忘记做运动。be busy doing sth. “忙于做某事”, 可排除 C 项; forget to do sth. “忘记去做某事”, forget doing sth. “忘记做过某事”。由题意可知, 应选 B。

妙辨异同 in hospital, in a/the hospital

in hospital

住院(有病)

in a/the hospital

在医院里(工作或看护病人)

▶ His father is in hospital. 他爸爸住院了。

▶ He will meet friend in the hospital. 他到医院里去见一个朋友。

1b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Talk about the jobs in the pictures above.

谈论上面图片中的工作。

He's a policeman. It's an exciting job.
他是一名警察。这是一种令人兴奋的工作。



1c What other jobs do you know? Use the words from 1a to describe these

你还知道什么其他的工作? 利用 1a 中的单词描述这些工作。

jobs.

2a Listen to the conversation. What jobs do Betty, Jenny, and Sam want?

听对话。 贝蒂、詹妮、山姆想做什么工作?

Write the jobs below.

在下面写下这些工作。

	Wants to be 想当	Why? 为什么
Betty 贝蒂	policewoman 女警察	
Jenny 詹妮		
Sam 山姆		

2b Listen again. Why are Betty, Jenny, and Sam interested in these jobs?

再听一遍。 为什么贝蒂、詹妮和山姆对这些工作有兴趣?

Complete the chart above.

完成上面的图表。

I want to be a newspaper reporter, because it's an interesting^③ job.

我想当报社记者,因为这是一种有趣的工作。

2c GROUPWORK 小组活动

What do you want to be? Why? Tell your classmates.

你想干什么? 为什么? 告诉你的同学。

3a Read the newspaper want ads. Fill in the blanks with the correct jobs.

阅读报纸上的招聘广告。 用正确的工作填空。

Jobs	actor	reporter	waiter
工作	演员	记者	侍者

1 WANTED: Do you like to work late? Do you like to work hard^②? Do you like to meet people? If your answer is "Yes", then we have a job^③ for you. 招聘: 你愿意工作到很晚吗? 你愿意干累活吗? 你愿意与别人打交道吗? 如果你回答“是”,那么我们可以为你提供一个

- newspaper ['nju:z,peɪpə], ['nju:s,peɪpə] n. 报纸
- hard [hɑ:(r)d] adv. 辛苦地;努力地

Section B

① interesting adj. 令人感兴趣的;有趣的,有意思的,在句中可作表语,其主语是物,也可作定语,既可修饰人也可修饰物。

> Watching such a football match wasn't interesting at all. 看这样的足球赛一点趣味也没有。

> It's such an interesting story! 这个故事真有趣!

> Betty's uncle is an interesting person. 贝蒂的叔叔很有趣。

拓展 interested adj. 感兴趣的,在句中只作表语,其主语只能是人,常用于“be(become) interested in”结构。

> I'm interested to hear about your family. 我很想听听你家的情况。

> She becomes interested in English. 她开始对英语感兴趣了。

> The boy is interested in playing computer games. 这个男孩对玩电脑游戏很感兴趣。

② hard adv. 辛苦地;努力地;猛烈地

> He works very hard. 他很努力地工作。

> It is raining hard. 雨下得很大。

搭配 work hard at sth. 在某方面努力

拓展 hard adj. 坚硬的;困难的

❖ If you don't work hard now, you will be hard to get a job in the future. 现在工作不努力,将来努力找工作。



如何记忆 hard 的一词多义? 请点击下框“图解助记”。

③ job n. [C] 工作

> She has a job at a children's hospital. 她在儿童医院工作。

> He's got a good job. 他找到了一份好工作。

> Tell me something about your new job. 跟我说说你的新工作情况吧。

提示 请点击下框“一言辨异”,学习 job 和 work 的区别吧。

参考答案

- 2a Betty: policewoman
Jenny: reporter
Sam: reporter
- 2b Betty: dangerous exciting
Jenny: busy fun interesting
Sam: exciting difficult new

非常点拨

图解

助记 hard 的一词多义



一言辨异

The job requires five-year work experience in edit. 该工作要求有 5 年的编辑工作经验。

——job 作“工作”解,特指“雇用工作”,是可数名词;work “工作,劳动”,指一般的工作,为普通用词,且不可数。

you **as** a

工作。

Call Allan's **Restaurant at** 555-3937.

电话:555-3937 联系人:艾伦餐馆

2 **SUMMER JOB**: Do you like to talk with people? Do you like to write

夏季的工作: 你喜欢与人交谈吗? 你喜欢写故事吗?

stories? Do you want to work for a **magazine**? Then come and work for us

你想为杂志社工作吗? 那么来为我们工作,做一名

as a

吧。

Please call Karen at 555-8823.

电话:555-8823 联系人:凯伦

3 **HELP WANTED**: Do you like to sing and dance? Do you like to work

招聘: 你喜欢唱歌跳舞吗? 你喜欢跟其他年轻

with other **young** people? Do you want to be in the school **play**? Do you

人一起工作吗? 你想在校园剧里表演吗? 你愿意

like to work evenings and weekends? We need an today!

在晚上和周末工作吗? 现在我们需要一名!

Call Frank at 555-2559.

电话:555-2559 联系人:弗兰克

3b Write words for the pictures in the newspaper want ad.

为报纸上招聘广告的图片写广告词。

WANTED: Do you want a 1. busy but exciting job? Do you want

招聘: 你想找一份忙碌但有趣的工作吗? 你想与演员

to work with actors, 2. _____ and other interesting people? We need

_____和其他有趣的人们一起工作吗? 我们需要

a 3. _____. Call the Evening 4. _____ at 555-3256.

一位_____. 给“晚间_____”打电话,电话号码 555-3256。

3c Write your own newspaper want ad.

写自己的报纸招聘广告。

Wanted: _____

招聘: _____

• **as** [æz] *prep.* 作为

• **at** [æt] *prep.* 按照;根据

• **summer** ['sʌmə(r)] *n.* 夏季;夏天

• **story** ['stɔ:ri] *n.* 故事;事迹;小说

• **magazine** ['mægəzi:n], ['mægə'zi:n] *n.* 杂志;期刊

• **young** [jʌŋ] *adj.* 年轻的;年纪小的

• **play** [pleɪ] *n.* 戏剧;剧本

4 as *prep.* 作为

▶ He works as a teacher. 他的工作是一名教师。

▶ As a student, you must study hard. 作为一名学生,你应当努力学习。

搭配 work as 以……为工作

5 在英语中有些名词可以加's来表示所有关系,带这种词尾的名词形式称为名词所有格。

▶ This is my English teacher's chair. 这是我们英语老师的椅子。

▶ Where's today's papers? 今天的报纸在哪儿?

▲ 两个由 and 连接的名词所有格,构成形式不同,所表达的意义就不同。

▶ Lucy and Lily's bedroom 露西和莉莉的卧室(指两人共有)

▶ Lucy's and Lily's bedrooms 露西和莉莉的卧室(意指两个人各自有卧室)

提醒 "'s"所有格和"of"所有格有时都能用于同一名词,且意思一样,但通常这两种形式不能随意互换。请点击下框“巧学助记”。

6 at 此处作介词,意为“按照;根据”。

▶ Call me at 888-3431. 打 888-3431 联系我。

▶ You can call her at the number I gave you. 你可以按照我给你的电话号码打给她。

7 summer *n.* [U,C] 夏季;夏天

▶ We often go swimming in summer. 夏天我们常常去游泳。

▶ It doesn't often rain in summer here. 这儿夏天不常下雨。

搭配 summer holiday 暑假

in (the) summer 在夏季

思考 你知道四季怎么表达吗? 请点击下框“巧学助记”。

8 story *n.* [C] 故事;事迹;小说

▶ Please read us a story! 请给我们读个故事!

▶ Tell me about your story in America. 告诉我你在美国的事情。

搭配 tell a story 讲故事

参考答案

• 3a 1. waiter 2. reporter 3. actor

• 3b 1. busy 2. policeman
3. reporter 4. Newspaper

非常点拨

巧学助记

巧记's和of所有格

[译] 一根桌子腿

[误] a table's leg

[正] a leg of table

[注] 在表示有生命的名词和表示时间的名词后,一般常用's所有格;of所有格通常与无生命的名词连用。

巧学助记

巧记四季

Spring, spring, the bird begins to sing;

Summer, summer, the girl picks a flower;

Autumn, autumn, the farmers work on farm;

Winter, winter, the children make a snowman together.

4 GROUPWORK 小组活动

What jobs did your classmates write about? Ask and answer questions to find out.
你的同学写的是有关什么工作? 提问并回答以弄清楚这个问题。

Is it a busy job?
这工作忙碌吗?

Yes, it is.
是,是的。

Is it a job in a hospital?
这工作是在医院里吗?

No, it isn't.
不,不是的。

Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | | |
|---|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> actor
演员 | <input type="checkbox"/> bank clerk
银行职员 | <input type="checkbox"/> shop assistant
售货员 | <input type="checkbox"/> doctor
医生 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> student
学生 | <input type="checkbox"/> policeman
警察 | <input type="checkbox"/> reporter
记者 | <input type="checkbox"/> waiter
侍者 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> busy
忙碌的 | <input type="checkbox"/> exciting
激动人心的 | <input type="checkbox"/> dangerous
危险的 | <input type="checkbox"/> fun
风趣的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> difficult
困难的 | <input type="checkbox"/> boring
令人厌倦的 | <input type="checkbox"/> interesting
有趣的 | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3a Complete the chart.

完成这个图表。

Happy Children[®] School 幸福儿童学校

We are an **international** school for children of 5-12. Our children are from Japan, Canada and Singapore. We want a P. E. teacher to **teach** 们来自日本、加拿大和新加坡。我们需要一名体育老师教英式足球、排球和网球。 We also want a music teacher to teach guitar, piano and violin. 还需要一名音乐老师教吉他、钢琴和小提琴。

	P. E. Teacher 体育老师	Music Teacher 音乐老师
Skills [®] 技能		
Can speak... 会说		

- children [ˈtʃɪldrən] n. (child的复数) 孩子们
- international [ˌɪntə(r)ˈnæʃənəl] adj. 国际的
- teach [ti:tʃ] v. 教; 讲授
- skill [skɪl] n. 技能; 技巧

Self Check

1 children n. [pl.] 孩子们

There are quite a few children in the park. 公园里有很多小孩。

The children are playing in the sun. 孩子们在阳光下做游戏。

Children always like cartoons. 孩子们一般都喜欢看动画片。

搭配 children's books 儿童读物

Children's Day 六一儿童节

children's palace 少年宫

你知道吗 children 这样名词变复数无规律可循的还有哪些吗? 请点击下框“巧学助记”。

2 teach v. 教; 讲授

To teach a fish how to swim. (谚) 班门弄斧。

She teaches English to the students (= She teaches the students English). 她教学生学英语。

▲ teach 后可接双宾语。teach sb. sth. = teach sth. to sb. 教某人某事物

搭配 teach oneself 自学

teach sb. a lesson 给某人一个教训

拓展 teacher n. 教师

你知道吗 teach 这样带双宾语的及物动词, 如果把直接宾语置于间接宾语之前必须在变换时加“to”。这类词都有哪些? 请点击下框“巧学助记”。

3 skill n. [C, U] 技能; 技巧

Reading and writing are different skills. 阅读和写作是不同的技能。

He has skill in playing basketball. 他打篮球有技巧。

拓展 skilled adj. 熟练的, 有技能的

skillful adj. 灵巧的, 娴熟的

非常点拨

巧学助记

名词单数变复数口诀

还有一些不规则, 下面咱来说一说:
oo 常要变 ee, foot—feet 是一例;
男人女人 a 变 e, woman—women 又一例;
还有一个要记准; child 复数是 children;
鹿(deer)和绵羊(sheep)是一家, 单数复数无变化。

巧学助记

接双宾语并可变为加 to 形式的动词

“七给”“一带”to 不少。
“七给”: give, pass, lend, write, show, send, hand
“一带”: bring

- 3b** Imagine you want one of the jobs at HCS. Write and explain why you are a good person for the job.
想象你想在 HCS 找一份工作。 写出并解释为什么你是这一工作的合适人选。

Dear **Sir or Madam**,

亲爱的先生/女士:

I am a P. E. teacher. I can...
我是一名体育老师。我讲……

• **sir** [sɜ:(r)] *n.* 先生; 阁下

• **madam** ['mædəm] *n.* 女士; 夫人

语法在线

一、如何询问别人的职业

询问某人的职业, 一般有以下几种说法:

- What + be + 主语?
 - What are your parents? 你的父母是干什么的?
 - They're professors. 他们是教授。
- What + 助动词 + 主语 + do?
 - What does your sister do? 你的姐姐是干什么的?
 - She is an actor. 她是一名演员。
- What + be + sb. 's job(s)?
 - What is Jim's job? 吉姆的职业是什么?
 - He is a doctor. 他是一名医生。
- What + 助动词 + 主语 + want to be?
 - What do you want to be? 你长大后想干什么?
 - I want to be a reporter. 我想成为一名记者。

二、职业名词构词法

- 动词 + -er
clean(打扫) — cleaner(清洁工)
- 名词(多为自然学科) + -ist
art(艺术; 美术) — artist(艺术家; 画家)
- 名词 + -ian
music(音乐; 乐曲) — musician(音乐家)
- 名词 + -man/woman
post(邮递) — postman(邮递员)

- ④ a) 英文书信里的称呼一般以 Dear... 或 My dear... 开头。给亲属写信时在 Dear 或 My dear 后面加上亲属关系即可。写给小辈或平辈可直呼其名; 写给不太熟悉的人常在 Dear 或 My dear 后加上“先生”或“太太”等尊称。

- Dear Mary, 亲爱的玛丽;
- Dear friends, 亲爱的朋友们;
- Dear Mr Black, 亲爱的布莱克先生;

书信开头称呼后要用逗号。

b) **madam** *n.* [C] (对妇女的尊称) 女士; 夫人; 小姐

提醒 madam 可用来称呼已婚或未婚女子, 是尊称, 一般单独使用, 不与人的姓连用。

Good morning, madam! 夫人, 早上好!
Miss 用来称呼未婚妇女, Mrs 用来称呼已婚女子; 它们必须和人的姓连用: Good morning, Miss/Mrs Wang! 王小姐/王夫人, 早上好!

提醒 请点击下框“归纳拓展”, 学习各种尊称。

点击名题

- _____ does your mother _____, Tom?
— She is a teacher.
A. What; do B. What; are
C. Where; do D. Where; are
【解析】 题意: “你的妈妈是做什么的, 汤姆?” “她是老师。” “What + be + 主语?” 或 “What + 助动词 + 主语 + do?” 都可以询问职业, 只有 A 符合。
【答案】 A
- _____ your sister?
— She is a teacher.
A. What is B. What are
C. What does D. What do
【解析】 题意: “你姐姐是做什么的?” “她是一名教师。” 根据题意, 主语是第三人称单数, 故排除 B、D 项; 询问职业可以用 “What + be + 主语?” 或 “What + 助动词 + 主语 + do?”, 故选 A 项。
【答案】 A
- What is your mother's _____?
— She is a farmer.
A. name B. address
C. number D. job
【解析】 题意: “你妈妈的工作是什么?” “她是一名农民。” name “姓名”; address “地址”; number “号码”; job “工作”。由答句可知是询问职业, 故选 D 项。
【答案】 D

非常点拨

归纳拓展

各种尊称

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| • Miss 小姐 | • Madam 夫人, 小姐 |
| • Mr 先生 | • gentleman 先生 |
| • Mrs 夫人, 太太 | • lady 女士 |
| • Sir 先生 | • Ms 女士 |

真题回放

(2008·福建厦门)

— Could you tell me _____?

— He is an actor.

A. who he is B. what is he C. what he does

【解析】 C。题意: “你能告诉我他是干什么的吗?” “他是一位演员。” 宾语从句要用陈述语序, 根据答语可知是询问“他的职业”。故选 C。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- Does he want to be an actor _____ a singer?
—An actor.
A. and B. or C. but D. so
- We study _____ the day and sleep _____ night.
A. in; at B. on; at C. at; in D. at; on
- Teachers work _____ schools and the doctors work _____ hospitals.
A. in; in B. at; in C. at; at D. in; at
- If you want to go to a good college, you must study _____.
A. good B. nice C. hard D. busy
- He plays football _____.
A. every weeks B. every of week
C. other week D. every week
- You are a beautiful girl!
—_____.
A. No, I'm not B. Sorry, I don't
C. Thank you D. Yes, I do
- What's her job?
—She is _____.
A. well B. here
C. my friend D. a shop assistant
- There is much _____ in the bag.
A. books B. money C. pens D. ruler
- He is busy _____ in the work place.
A. work B. to work C. working D. works
- Nurses often _____ white uniform at work.
A. put on B. wears C. wear D. puts on
- _____
—He's an English teacher.
A. How is the man B. What does the man do
C. Who is the man D. Where is the man
- I have two sisters. One is thirteen, the _____ is nine.
A. other B. another C. else D. others
- My aunt wants to _____ a bank clerk.
A. be B. is C. are D. /
- _____ is your aunt?
—She is a manager.
A. Who B. How C. What D. When
- Do you want a job _____ a bank clerk?
A. of B. in C. for D. as

II. 完形填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Mr Smith is my good friend. He is an 1. He comes 2 New York. He has a daughter. 3 name is Alice. Now she is 4 Mr Smith in Beijing. Mr Smith is a teacher. He 5 English in a middle school. He can 6 a little Chinese. So he 7 to Chinese class every evening. He is learning very fast. Alice 8 at home in the evening. She likes 9 TV. On Sundays, Mr Smith often 10 Alice to the park. They are very happy in China.

- A. English B. Chinese
C. French D. American
- A. to B. from C. at D. of
- A. His B. Her C. My D. Your
- A. with B. and C. to D. for
- A. teach B. teacher C. teaches D. teaching
- A. say B. speaks C. speak D. says
- A. go B. goes C. going D. come
- A. stays B. lives C. live D. stay
- A. watch B. watches
C. watching D. to watch
- A. brings B. takes C. gets D. allows

III. 阅读理解 (共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

The Blacks are from Paris. Now they are in Beijing. This is their first visit to China.

They are going to stay in China for over two weeks. They want to visit some big cities. They want to learn some Chinese, too.

Mr Black is a driver. He likes driving in Beijing very much. Mrs Black is a teacher. She often visits a middle school in Beijing. She likes to speak French with the students there.

They take many photos in China. When they are back to France, they are going to show the photos to their friends. They want French people to know more about China.

- The Blacks come from _____.
A. America B. England C. France D. Canada
- The Blacks are staying in _____ now.
A. England B. China C. Shanghai D. France
- What does Mr Black do? He is a _____.
A. driver B. teacher C. farmer D. student
- Mrs Black likes talking with Chinese students in _____.
A. Chinese B. English C. French D. Japanese
- The Blacks take a lot of photos in China because they _____.

- A. like taking photos
B. want to sell the photos for money
C. want to take the photos to England
D. want the French people to know more about China

B

Mrs Jones is a teacher. Her house isn't far from her school, and she always walks there in the morning. All the pupils in the school are very young. Today Mrs Jones walks to school as usual. It's very cold, the cold wind goes into her eyes and big tears run out of them. She reaches the school, opens the door and goes into the room. The room is nice and warm. Mrs Jones is very happy. A small boy looks at her for a few seconds and says, "Don't cry, school isn't very bad." With these words he puts his arm around her.

6. Mrs Jones is a _____.
A. mother B. girl C. teacher D. doctor
7. Mrs Jones works in a _____.
A. school B. factory C. hospital D. company
8. Mrs Jones goes to work _____ every day.
A. by bus B. on foot C. by bike D. by car
9. The small boy _____ Mrs Jones and school very much.
A. loves B. dislikes
C. doesn't like D. hate
10. Who's the small boy?
A. a student B. her son
C. a teacher D. her friend

IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

The Browns are from the United Kingdom. They live in New York. Mr Brown is a doctor. Mrs Brown doesn't work. She has a lot of housework to do every day. They have two sons. Bob is ten years old and Tom is eight years old. They are students. Bob doesn't want to be a doctor but Tom does. Bob wants to be a pilot(飞行员). Their daughter, Molly, doesn't go to school. She is only four years old. Molly wants to be a teacher.

根据短文内容简要回答问题。

1. Where are the Browns from?

2. Where do the Browns live now?

3. How many children do Mr and Mrs Brown have?

4. Who wants to be a pilot?

5. How old is Molly?

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. My father likes reading _____ (报纸) after dinner.
2. He needs an _____ (助手) to help him with his work.
3. My friend is a bank _____ (职员). He works in a bank.
4. _____ (有时) Alan has lunch in a restaurant.
5. She has no _____ (钱) now, so she can't buy anything.
6. Don't go o _____. It is too late.
7. —I like tigers. They are beautiful.
—But they are d _____.

8. He is old, but he looks y _____.
9. He teaches us history, and he is a good t _____.
10. My mother works in a h _____. She is a nurse.

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. He wants to be an actor. (对划线部分提问)
_____ want to _____?
2. He often goes to work late. (改为同义句)
He is often _____ work.
3. The doctors wear white uniforms. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ the doctors _____ white uniforms?
4. He is a waiter. (改为同义句)
He _____ a waiter.
5. Molly is a bank clerk. (对划线部分提问)
_____ Molly _____?

VII. 补全对话(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

从方框中选择最恰当的选项完成下列对话,并将答案写在相应的横线上。

- A. That's boring.
B. What about you?
C. She's a bank clerk.
D. You want to be a reporter.
E. I want to be a police officer.

A: Hi, Mary, what does your mother do?

B: 1

A: Do you want to be a bank clerk, too?

B: Oh, no, no. 2 They usually spend all day counting money.

A: Then, what do you want to be?

B: 3

A: Oh, but that can be dangerous and difficult.

B: Yes, but it's also kind of exciting and interesting. 4

A: I like talking to people, meeting pop stars and VIPs and writing stories.

B: 5

A: Yeah.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

VII. 书面表达(满分15分)

根据提示写一篇短文,介绍史密斯一家人。

Mr Smith:	父亲,公司(company)司机,工作努力
Mrs Smith:	母亲,售货员(sales assistant),商场,态度友好,工作很认真
David Smith:	儿子,中学生,第十中学,北京,学习刻苦,喜欢交朋友,擅长打篮球,在学汉语,会说一点儿
Joy Smith:	女儿,6岁,喜欢玩具娃娃和玩游戏
共同爱好:	都喜欢中国,都喜欢中国食物和中国人

Unit 5

I'm watching TV. 我正在看电视。

Language Goal: Talk about what people are doing

语言目标: 谈论人们正在做什么



英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Match the words with the activities.

将单词与活动联系起来。

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. doing homework <u>d</u> | 2. watching TV _____ | 3. cleaning ^① _____ |
| 正在做作业 | 正在看电视 | 正在打扫 |
| 4. eating dinner _____ | 5. reading ^② _____ | |
| 正在吃晚餐 | 正在看书 | |
| 6. talking on the phone _____ | HAPPY APARTMENTS | |
| 正在打电话 | 快乐公寓 | |



1b Listen. What are these people doing? Write numbers from 1a.

听录音。这些人正在做什么? 用 1a 中的号码填写。

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| a. Jenny <u>2</u> | b. Dave and Mary _____ | c. John _____ |
| 詹妮 | 大卫和玛丽 | 约翰 |

- **clean** [kli:n] *v.* 打扫; 清除
- **read** [ri:d] *v.* 读; 阅读
- **on** [ɔ:n], [ɒn] *prep.* 通过; 以……的方式
- **apartment** [ə'pɑ:(r)tment] *n.* 公寓; 住宅



考点注释

Section A

① clean *v.* 打扫; 清除

▶ He is cleaning his room. 他在打扫他的房间。

▶ She cleans up the room after parties. 聚会后她会把房间打扫干净。

搭配 clean out 收拾干净

clean up 打扫, 整理

提示 请点击下框“图解辨析”, 学习 clean 与 clear 在作为动词时的区别。

② read *v.* 读; 阅读

▶ The children are learning to read and write English. 孩子们正在学习读写英文。

▶ The students read the text in class. 学生们在课上朗读课文。

搭配 read out 高声朗读, 把……读出声

▲ read 的原形、过去式、过去分词同形, 但不同音。

👉 你还知道哪些原形、过去式、过去分词同形的单词呢? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

参考答案

- 1a 1. d 2. a 3. b
4. c 5. f 6. e
- 1b a. Jenny 2
b. Dave and Mary 4
c. John 1

图解

辨析 clean, clear



clean the table
擦净桌子



clear the table
收拾桌子

归纳拓展 动词原形、过去式、过去分词同形

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| • cost(花费)—cost—cost | • cut(割)—cut—cut |
| • hit(打)—hit—hit | • hurt(伤害)—hurt—hurt |
| • let(让)—let—let | • put(放)—put—put |
| • read(读)—read—read | |

非常点拨

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions about what people are doing in the picture above.

A: What's he doing?
他在做什么?
B: He's reading.
他在看书。

2a Listen and answer these questions.

听并回答问题。

1. What is Steve doing?
史蒂夫正在做什么?
2. Does Steve want to go to the movies?
史蒂夫想去看电影吗?

2b Put these questions and answers in order to make a conversation.

将这些问题和回答排序,组成一则对话。

Then listen again. Are you correct?

然后再听一遍。你做对了吗?

_____ Do you want to go to the movies?
你想去看电影吗?

_____ I'm watching TV.
我正在看电视。

1 _____ What are you doing?
你在做什么?

_____ That sounds good. This TV show is boring.
那听起来不错。这电视节目真没劲。

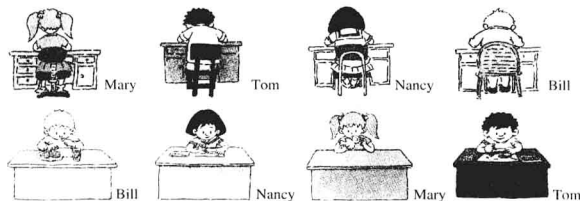
2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Look at the pictures. Guess what the people are doing.

看图。猜一猜这些人在干什么?

A: Is Nancy doing her homework?
南希正在做作业吗?

B: No, she isn't. She's writing a letter.
不,她正在写信。



3a Write the correct numbers of the pictures next to the conversations below.



Conversation A= _____

对话 A

A: Do you want to go to the movies?
你想去看电影吗?

B: Sure, this video is boring.
当然,这个录像真没劲。

A: When do you want to go?
你想什么时候去?

B: Let's go at six o'clock.
我们6点钟去吧。

Conversation B= _____

对话 B

A: What are you doing?
你在干什么?

B: I'm reading a book.
我在看书。

A: Do you want to go to the movies?
你想去看电影吗?

B: Sure, when do you want to go?
当然,你想什么时候去?

A: Let's go at seven o'clock.
我们7点钟去吧。

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Role play. Practice the conversations in 3a.

角色表演。练习3a中的对话。

- TV show 电视节目
- sure [ʃʊr], [ʃɔ:] adv. 当然;的确



参考答案

- 2a 1. He's watching TV. 2. Yes, he does.
- 2b 3, 2, 1, 4
- 2c 1. A: Is Mary doing homework?
B: No, she isn't. She's playing with a toy.
2. A: Is Tom doing homework?
B: No, he isn't. He's drawing a picture.
3. A: Is Bill doing homework?
B: No, he isn't. He's eating dinner.

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Questions 问题	Answers 回答	Look! 注意
What are you doing? 你在干什么?	I'm watching TV. 我在看电视。	I'm=I am
What's he doing? 他在干什么?	He's doing his home- work. 他在做作业。	What's= What is He's=He is
What's she doing? 她在干什么?	She's reading. 她在看书。	She's=She is

4 PAIRWORK 结对活动

Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Then cover the questions and
看图回答问题。 然后盖住这些问题，

say what's happening in the pictures.

说出图中正在发生的事情。

Where is he?

他在哪儿?

What's he waiting for?

他在等什么?

Who are Ben and Tim talking to?

本和蒂姆正在和谁说话?

Where are they all going?

他们所有人正要去哪儿?

What's he taking?

他拿着什么?

What's he reading?

他在看什么?

What are they talking about?

他们正在说什么?

What's the man doing?

那个男人正在干什么?

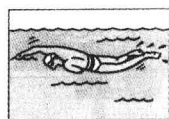
Section B

B部分

1a Look at the pictures. Complete the chart.

看图。 完成图表。

Places 地点	Activities 活动
1.	reading books 看书
2. pool 水池	
3.	
4.	



swimming 游泳



shopping 购物



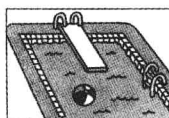
library 图书馆



mall 商场



play basketball 打篮球



pool 游泳池

• wait [weɪt] v. 等待; 等候

• activity [æk'tɪvɪti] n. 活动

• shopping ['ʃɒpɪŋ] n. 买东西; 购物

• wait for 等候; 等待

• pool [pu:l] n. 水池; 水塘

• mall [mɔ:l] n. 商场; 购物中心

③ wait for 等候; 等待

I am waiting for you at the station. 我在车站等你。

We're waiting for an answer. 我们在等待回答。

拓展 wait v. 等待; 等候

You have to wait until next week. 你必须等到下星期了。

搭配 waiting room 候诊室

你知道吗等公共汽车怎样翻译吗? 请点击下框“图解助记”。

参考答案

- 3a conversation A=picture 3
conversation B=picture 2
- 4 1. He is in a supermarket. He's taking a bottle of juice.
2. He's waiting for a bus. He's reading a newspaper.
3. Lisa and Tim are talking to a policewoman. They're talking about the man.
4. They're all going to the police station. The man is crying.

Section B

① activity n. [C] 活动

We have many activities after class. 课后我们有许多活动。

Swimming is a good activity. 游泳是一项好运动。

拓展 active adj. 积极的, 活跃的

activity, act, action 都可作名词, 表示“行动, 活动”, 你能正确理解它们吗? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”, 并研读以下例句, 加深理解。

It is a kind act to help a blind man across the street. 帮助盲人过街是慈善的行为。

Actions are more important than words. 做比说更重要。

② pool n. [C] 水池; 水塘

There are many kinds of fishes in the pool. 水塘里有各种各样的鱼。

He likes to swim in the pool. 他喜欢在水池里游泳。

搭配 a swimming pool 游泳池

参考答案

- 1a 1. library—reading books
2. pool—swimming
3. school—playing basketball
4. mall—shopping

图解

助记“等公共汽车”



wait (in a line) for a bus
(排队)等公共汽车

妙辨异同

activity, act, action

activity

指定期或固定的行为。

act

指短时间内的单一行动。

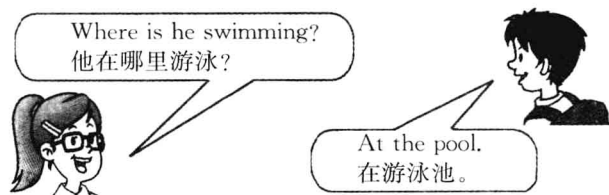
action

指较长时间内多次的行动的集合体, 即许多 acts 集合而成的复杂行为。

非常点拨

1b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Look at the pictures in 1a. Then ask and answer questions.
看 1a 中的图片。 然后提问并回答问题。

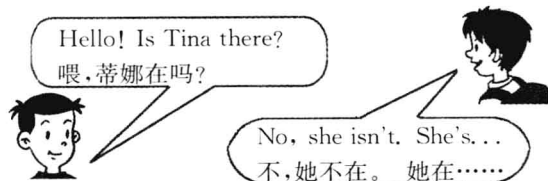
2a Listen and write the places you hear in the chart below.
听录音,并将你所听到的地点填入下表中。

Name 名字	Place 地点	Activity 活动
Tina 蒂娜	mall 购物广场	
Mike 迈克		
Lisa 丽莎		

2b Listen again and write the activities you hear in the chart above.
再听一遍,将你所听到的活动填入上表中。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Use the information in the chart to make a conversation.
用图表中的信息编一则对话。

3a Read the letter from Mike to his pen pal.
阅读这封迈克写给笔友的信。

Underline the activities and circle the places.
在活动下面划线,并圈出地点。

Then read the letter again and number the photos [1-4].
然后再读一遍,并给照片标号[1-4]。

Dear Linda,
亲爱的琳达:

Thanks for your letter and the photos. Here are some of my photos. In the first photo, I'm playing basketball at school. In the second photo, I'm swimming at the pool. In the next photo, you can see my family at home.

We're eating dinner. In the last photo, I'm with my sister Gina. She's doing her homework—I'm watching TV.

Mike
迈克

3b Fill in the blanks.

填空。
Dear Bob,
亲爱的鲍勃:

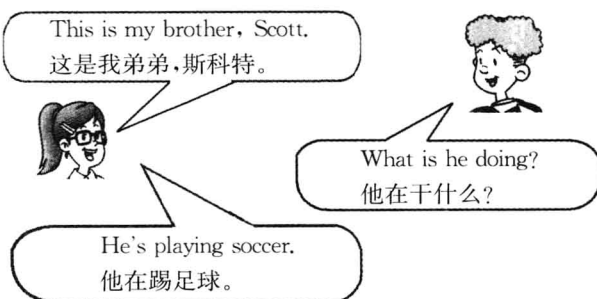
Here is a photo of my family. In this photo, I'm doing my homework. My father is _____. My grandfather is _____. My grandmother is _____ to my mother. _____.

And my sister is _____.
而我妹妹正在_____。

3c Bring in some photos of your own (or draw some pictures of you and your family or friends) and write about them.
带几张你本人的照片(或画几张你自己、你家人或朋友的图画),然后描述它们。

4 GROUPWORK 小组活动

Tell the group about your photos.
向小组成员描述你的照片。



参考答案

• 2b

Name	place	Activity
Tina	mall	eating lunch
Mike	school	playing basketball
Lisa	library	reading books

句型点津

③ 这是一个倒装句。当 here 位于句首时,常引起句子的倒装。当句中主语是复数时,用 Here are...; 当句中主语是单数时,用 Here is...。这一句型常用于引出后面要说或要列举的事情。

▶ Here are some of my favorite subjects. 这些是我所喜欢的科目。

▶ Here is my gift for your father. 这是我送给你父亲的礼物。

Self Check

自我检测

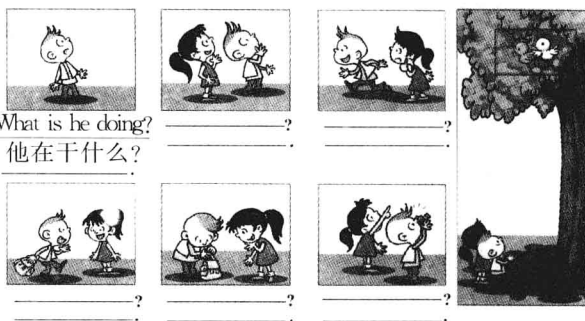
1 Key word check. Check(✓) the words you know.
关键词检测。 在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> eating
正在吃 | <input type="checkbox"/> playing basketball
正在打篮球 | <input type="checkbox"/> shopping
正在购物 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> doing homework
正在做作业 | <input type="checkbox"/> reading
正在读 | <input type="checkbox"/> cleaning
正在打扫 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> watching TV
正在看电视 | <input type="checkbox"/> talking on the phone
正在打电话 | <input type="checkbox"/> library
图书馆 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> mall
购物广场 | <input type="checkbox"/> pool
游泳池 | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.
在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Look at the pictures. Complete the story. The words you may need: camera bird
看图。 完成故事。 你可能用得上的
单词: 照相机 鸟

- camera [ˈkæməɹə] n. 照相机
- bird [bɜː(r)d] n. 鸟



What is he doing?
他在干什么?

_____?

_____?



参考答案

- 3 1. He's looking.
- 2. What are they doing?
They're looking.
- 3. What is he doing?
He's running.
- 4. What is he doing?
He's taking a bag.
- 5. What is he doing?
He's opening the bag.
- 6. What is he doing?
He's taking a photo with a camera.
- 7. What are they doing?
They're looking at the birds in the tree.

学法指导

词汇学习的核心方法在于重复。但无论具体是什么记忆方法,在记忆周期的规律上归根到底都符合艾宾浩斯的遗忘曲线。怎样把瞬间的理解化为永恒的记忆,其核心就是不断地重复。就像一个人,见的次数多了,死活都记住了。所以建议大家,随身带个小的单词本,利用各种零散的时间不断翻看。



语法在线

现在进行时

1. 现在进行时的构成(以动词 work 为例)

(1) 肯定式:

I am working. / We/You/They are working. / He/She/It is working.

(2) 疑问式:

Am I working? / Are we/you/they working? / Is he/she/it working?

(3) 否定式

I am not working. / We/You/They are not working. / He/She/It is not working.

2. 现在进行时的缩略形式

I am = I'm, I am not = I'm not;

you are = you're, you are not = you're not/you aren't;

we are = we're, we are not = we're not/we aren't;

they are = they're, they are not = they're not/they aren't;

he is = he's, he is not = he's not/he isn't;

she is = she's, she is not = she's not/she isn't;

it is = it's, it is not = it's not/it isn't

3. 现在进行时的基本用法

(1) 表示说话时正在进行尚未完成的动作或状态。

The telephone is ringing. Would you answer it, please? 电话在响,你能不能接一下?

What are you doing now, Bob? Grandma is asking to see you. 鲍勃,你在干什么? 奶奶要见你。

(2) 表示现阶段正在进行的动作,虽然此时此刻动作不一定正在进行。

George is working on a new book about stories in schools. 乔治在写一本新书,是关于校园故事的。

I am helping my Dad on the farm this summer vacation. 这个暑假我在农场给爸爸帮忙。

(3) 表示此时此刻某一动作不断地重复。

The boy is jumping with great joy at the sight of her mother. 看到妈妈,小男孩高兴得不停地跳。

Someone is knocking at the door. It might be the postman. 有人在不停地敲门,可能是邮递员。

(4) 进行时态用于瞬时动词,往往表示“即将……”,常与表示将来时间的状语连用。这类动词有:come, go, leave, start, begin, stop, arrive, stay, return, take 等。

Are you staying in Guangzhou for a week? 你将在广州呆一周吗?

I am taking my daughter to the Central Park this Saturday. 这个周六我将带女儿去中央公园。



点击名题

1. —What are you doing now?

—I _____ the window.

A. is cleaning B. am cleaning

C. clean D. cleans

【解析】题意:“你在做什么?”“我在擦窗户。”根据题意,此处表示正在进行的动作,故用现在进行时,排除 C、D 项;主语是第一人称 I,谓语动词应用 am。

【答案】B

2. Listen! Mary _____ in the next room.

A. sings B. is singing

C. sang D. was singing

【解析】题意:听!玛丽正在隔壁唱歌。由“listen!”可知,句子用现在进行时。

【答案】B

3. —Where's your mother, Helen?

—She _____ the flowers in the garden.

A. waters B. watered

C. is watering D. has watered

【解析】题意:“海伦,你妈妈在哪儿?”“她正在花园里浇花。”根据题意,问句问的是现在的情况,因而应用现在进行时。

【答案】C

4. —Keep quiet, kids. Dad _____ in the next room.

—OK, Mum.

A. slept B. sleeps

C. is sleeping D. had slept

【解析】题意:“孩子们,安静!爸爸正在隔壁房间睡觉。”“好的,妈妈。”由题意很容易判断应用现在进行时。

【答案】C

5. —What's your brother doing in his room now?

—He _____ a kite.

A. makes B. made

C. is making D. will make

【解析】题意:“你弟弟现在在房间干什么呢?”“他正在制作风筝。”由句子中的时间状语 now 提示看出用现在进行时。

【答案】C

非常点拨

巧学助记

现在进行时用法口诀

主语在句首,am, is, are 跟在后,
现在分词跟着走,其他成分不可丢。
表示动作正进行,句中 now 时间定。
一般问句,把 be 提到句前去。
否定句式也简单,be 后只把 not 添。

巧学助记

现在分词构成口诀

现在分词用途多,进行时态不可缺。
它的构成很好记,动词后缀 ing。
词尾若有哑音 e, 去 e 再加没问题。
一辅重读闭音节,这个字母要双写。
还有一点要注意,改 ie 为 y 再加 ing。

- D. Reading books.
4. How many students are playing basketball now?
A. Only one. B. Two.
C. Many. D. We don't know.
5. Which of the following is NOT right?
A. Ann is cleaning the teacher's desk.
B. Mike is helping Ann.
C. Bill and Jim are still playing basketball.
D. The students all look happy in the morning.

B

Mr Smith goes to the town to see his son Tom. Tom is studying music in a school there. He tells his father he does well and his father is very happy. That evening Mr Smith buys two tickets for a concert (音乐会). They get there early after dinner. They are sitting in the hall and listening to the music. The music is beautiful and Mr Smith enjoys it very much. But he finds his son doesn't like it at all. Mr Smith wants to know something about Tom. So he asks, "Do you know the music?" "Yeah," answers Tom. "And what's the musician playing now?" Mr Smith asks. Tom doesn't know how to answer it. He thinks hard and then says, "... the piano."

6. Mr Smith's son is _____ now.
A. in town B. at home
C. in a home D. in a TV station
7. Tom _____ good at music.
A. doesn't do B. isn't do
C. doesn't D. isn't
8. Mr Smith and Tom are listening to a _____ concert.
A. guitar B. piano C. violin D. rock
9. Does Mr Smith know the name of the music?
A. Yes, he does.
B. No, he doesn't.
C. It's not mentioned in the passage.
D. Yes, he is.
10. Which of the following is RIGHT?
A. Mr Smith lives in town.
B. Tom knows much about the music.
C. Mr Smith likes the music.
D. Tom likes the music.

IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

Dear Sonia,

I'm writing this letter in the classroom. It's snowing outside and I'm sitting by the window.

Some of the boys are playing on the playground. They are throwing snowballs to each other. Some girls are building a snowman; some are chasing each other around the tree in front of the classroom. They are leaving foot prints everywhere. Our teacher is shouting something loudly to them. In the classroom, some girls are drawing pictures.

What are you doing?

Tina

根据信的内容回答下列问题。

1. What is Tina doing?
2. Where is Tina sitting in the classroom?
3. What are the boys doing?

4. Where are the girls chasing each other?
5. What are the girls doing in the classroom?

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. My sister is _____ (打扫) her room now.
2. Look! A _____ (鸟) is in the tree.
3. The students have many _____ (活动) in their school.
4. Lucy is taking photos with a _____ (相机).
5. Look! The girl is swimming in the _____ (水池).
6. —Do you want to go shopping?
—S _____, I like shopping very much.
7. Does your sister like to w _____ TV at home?
8. The students are w _____ for their teacher.
9. That idea s _____ good.
10. Let's p _____ computer games.

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. The girls are dancing at school. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ the girls _____ at school?
2. Mary's singing in her room. (改为否定句)
Mary _____ in her room.
3. They often draw pictures in the evening. (用 now 改写句子)
They _____ pictures now.
4. We're talking to our friends. (对划线部分提问)
_____ you _____ ?
5. My sister and I are cleaning our room. (对划线部分提问)
_____ are your sister and you _____ ?

VII. 翻译填空(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

1. 她在等什么?
_____ she _____ ?
2. 这儿有我的一些照片。
Here _____ some of _____.
3. 人们正在跳舞。
The people _____.
4. 他们正在图书馆看书吗?
_____ they _____ in the library?
5. 她正和她妈妈一起购物。
She is _____ her mother.

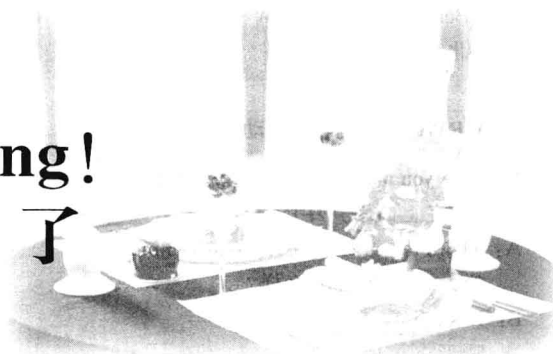
VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

现在是晚上7点,根据 Kate 提供的信息,请用现在进行时描述一下 Kate 一家人的活动情况。60 词左右。

father	read a book
mother	watch TV
grandfather	listen to the radio
grandmother	clean the room
Kate	do homework
Betty	play computer games



It's raining! 下雨了



A
部
分

Language Goals: Describe the weather; Describe what you are doing

语言目标: 描述天气; 描述你正在做什么



英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Match the words with the pictures [a-e].

将单词与图画[a-e]联系起来。

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. raining ^① a | 2. windy ^② _____ |
| 下雨的 | 刮风的 |
| 3. cloudy _____ | 4. sunny _____ |
| 多云的 | 阳光灿烂的 |
| 5. snowing _____ | |
| 下雪的 | |

How's the weather^③ in Shanghai?
上海天气怎么样?



It's cloudy.
多云。

1b Listen and write these city names in the boxes above.

听录音, 然后在上面的方框里写这些城市的名字。

- rain [reɪn] *v.* 下雨
- windy ['wɪndɪ] *adj.* 有风的; 多风的
- cloudy ['klaʊdɪ] *adj.* 多云的; 阴天的
- sunny ['sʌnɪ] *adj.* 晴朗的
- weather ['weðə(r)] *n.* 天气; 气候
- snow [snoʊ] *v.* 下雪

本页生词



考点注释

Section A

- ① rain *v.* 下雨 *n.* [U] 雨, 雨水
 - ▶ It is raining heavily outside. 外面雨下得很大。
 - ▶ Bob walks out in the rain. 鲍勃冒雨走出去。

提示 请点击下框“巧学助记”, 学习 rain 作名词时单复数的意义变化。
- ② windy *adj.* 有风的; 多风的
 - ▶ It is windy today. 今天有风。

思考 windy 由名词 wind 加后缀 -y 构成, 本页还有 cloudy, sunny 也是同样的构词法。这样的词还有哪些? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。
- ③ weather *n.* [U] 天气; 气候 (同音词: whether 是否)
 - ▶ How's the weather today? 今天的天气怎样?

▲ 询问天气如何, 英语中最常见的有两种句式, 由 how 及 what 作引导词。
[译] 今天天气怎样?
[误] What's the weather today?
[正] How's the weather today?
[正] What's the weather like today?

参考答案

- 1a 1. a 2. e 3. d 4. b 5. c

非常点拨

巧学助记

巧记 rain 的一词多义

rain 作名词, 同不定冠词和形容词连用时, 表示“一阵雨; ……雨”; 复数形式表示“大雨”或“雨季”。

- ▶ There is a heavy rain. 有一场大雨。
- ▶ The rains come in September. 雨季于九月到来。



归纳拓展

形容词后缀 -y

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| • snow — snowy 有雪的 | • rain — rainy 有雨的 |
| • frost — frosty 有霜的 | • wind — windy 有风的 |
| • storm — stormy 暴风雨的 | • salt — salty 咸的 |
| • noise — noisy 噪音的 | • fog — foggy 有雾的 |
| • dust — dusty 满是灰尘的 | • taste — tasty 美味的 |



Beijing	Moscow	Toronto	Boston	Shanghai
北京	莫斯科	多伦多	波士顿	上海

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Imagine you are in one of the places in the pictures above. Talk about the weather.
想象你在上面图片中的一个地方。 谈论天气。

A: Hi! How's the weather in Beijing?

嗨! 北京天气怎么样?

B: It's sunny.

晴天。

2a Listen and number the pictures [1-4] as you hear them.

听录音。一边听一边给图片编号[1-4]。



2b Listen again. Match the names with the activities.

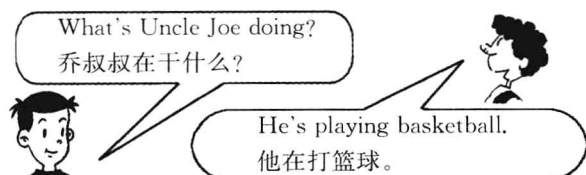
再听一遍。将名字与活动联系起来。

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. c Uncle Joe
乔叔叔 | a. is playing computer games.
在玩电脑游戏。 |
| 2. Jeff
杰夫 | b. is cooking .
在做饭。 |
| 3. Mary
玛丽 | c. is playing ^⑤ basketball.
在打篮球。 |
| 4. Aunt Sarah
莎拉婶婶 | d. is watching ^⑥ TV.
在看电视。 |

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions. Talk about the people in 2a.

提问并回答。 谈论 2a 中的人物。



- Moscow ['mɒskəʊ] 莫斯科(俄罗斯首都)
- Boston ['bɒstən] 波士顿(美国马萨诸塞州首府)
- cook [kʊk] v. 烹调; 煮

④ cook v. 烹调; 煮 n. [C] 厨师

- ▶ He is good at cooking. 他擅长烹调。
- ▶ My father sometimes cooks on Sunday. 我父亲有时在星期日下午。
- ▶ He is a good cook. 他是个好厨师。

搭配 cook sb. sth. / cook sth. for sb. 为某人做……饭

拓展 cooker n. 炊具(锅、炉灶、烤炉等)

提示 不要误以为 cooker 是厨师, 进一步记忆 cook 与 cooker, 请点击下框“图解助记”。

⑤ play v. 玩耍; 游戏

- ▶ Children like to play. 孩子们喜欢玩。
- ▶ He plays golf nearly every weekend. 他差不多每个周末都打高尔夫球。

▲ play 后跟球类游戏时, 球类前使用零冠词, 如: play football 踢足球; play baseball 打棒球; play basketball 打篮球; 当 play 后跟乐器名词时, 乐器前要使用定冠词 the, 如: play the piano 弹钢琴; play the violin 拉小提琴; play the guitar 弹吉他。

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”, 学习 play 的一词多义。

⑥ watch v. 观看; 注视

- ▶ He likes watching them eating. 他喜欢看着他们吃东西。

▶ My family often watch football match on weekend. 周末我们一家人常常去看足球赛。

▲ watch 常用于 watch sb. do sth. 和 watch sb. doing sth. 两个结构中。watch sb. do sth. 表示“看到某人做了某事”, 说明动作已经完成; 而 watch sb. doing sth. 表示“注视着某人正在做某事”, 说明动作正在进行。

▶ I watched him steal that book. 我看见他偷了那本书。(强调事实)

▶ The girl watched a thief stealing the books. 那个女孩看见一个贼正在偷书。(强调正在发生)

拓展 watch n. 手表

参考答案

- 1b a: Toronto
b: Beijing
c: Moscow
d: Shanghai
e: Boston

• 2a 2 3 4 1

• 2b 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b

非常点拨

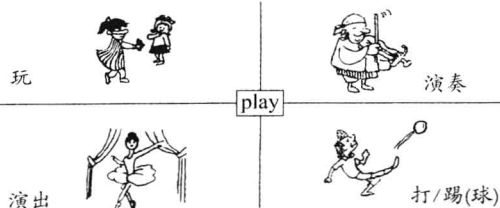
图解

助记 cook, cooker



图解

助记 play 的一词多义



Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

How's the weather? 天气怎么样?	It's raining. 在下雨。
What are you doing? 你在干什么?	I'm watching TV. 我在看电视。
What are they doing? 他们在干什么?	They're studying ⑦. 他们在学习。
What's he doing? 他在干什么?	He's playing basketball. 他在打篮球。
What's she doing? 她在干什么?	She's cooking. 她在做饭。
How's it going? 情况怎么样?	Great! 好极了!

3a Match the words with the faces in the box.

将单词与方框中的娃娃脸联系起来。

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------|
| A: How's it going?
情况怎么样? | B: Great!
好极了! |
|------------------------------|-------------------|
1. c Not bad⑧
还行。
 2. Great!
好极了!
 3. Terrible⑨!
糟透了!
 4. Pretty⑩ good.
很不错。

- a. 😊
- b. 😄
- c. 😐
- d. 😞

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Then make your own conversations.

练习下面的对话。

然后自己编写对话。

How's it going?
情况怎么样?

Great!
好极了!

How's the weather there?
那边天气怎么样?

It's snowing.
在下雪。

- how's=how is
- study ['stʌdi] v. 学习
- bad [bæd] adj. 坏的;劣质的
- terrible ['terəbəl] adj. 很糟的;极坏的;可怕的
- pretty ['prɪti] adv. 相当;很;颇

⑦ study v. 学习

- ▶ He studies hard to be a doctor. 他为了当医生而努力学习。
- ▶ I am studying art. 我在学习艺术。
- ▶ Does he study English? 他学英语吗?

搭配 study at school 在校学习

点读 study 与 learn 都有“学习”的意思,你知道它们的区别吗?请点击下框“图解助记”。

⑧ Not bad. 还不错。/还行。/还过得去。用于回答别人关于自己情况进展的问句。

- ▶ —How about your English study, Xiao Ming? 小明,你的英语学得怎么样?
—Not bad. 还不错。

拓展 bad adj. 坏的;劣质的

▶ Smoking is a bad habit. 吸烟是个坏习惯。

▶ He's a bad driver. 他是个差劲的司机(开车技术不佳)。

▶ Doctors think too much food is bad for you. 医生认为吃太多对你有害。

搭配 be bad at doing sth. 不擅长做某事
be bad for 对……有害
feel bad 感到不愉快,有病
go bad 腐坏

⑨ terrible adj. 很糟的;极坏的;可怕的

- ▶ They give us terrible food at the hotel. 旅馆给我们吃的饭菜糟透了。
- ▶ She is a terrible student. 她是一个极糟的学生。
- ▶ War is terrible. 战争是可怕的。

拓展 terribly adv. 可怕地,糟得很;非常,很

- ▶ He plays terribly. 他演奏得很糟糕。
- ▶ I'm terribly sorry! 我十分抱歉!

⑩ pretty adv. 相当;很;颇

- ▶ Your work is pretty good. 你的工作做得相当好。
 - ▶ He's pretty old now. 他现在很老了。
- 拓展 pretty adj. 漂亮的,可爱的;使人愉快的
- ▶ The bird has a pretty voice. 这只鸟声音悦耳。

点读 如何记忆 pretty 的一词多义?请点击下框“一言辨异”。

参考答案

- 3a 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a

图解

助记 study, learn



study

带研究性的学习



learn

由不会到会的学习

一言辨异

The pretty girl is pretty ill. 这位漂亮的姑娘病得相当厉害。

——第一个 pretty 是形容词“漂亮的,可爱的”,修饰名词 girl;第二个 pretty 是副词“很,相当”,用来修饰形容词 ill。

非常点拨

A: Hi, Jeff! This is Bob. B: Oh, hi, Bob. How's it going?
 嗨,杰夫。我是鲍勃。 哦,嗨,鲍勃。你最近怎么样?
 A: Not bad. B: How's the weather there?
 还行。 那边天气怎么样?
 A: Terrible. It's windy.
 很糟。 起风了。

4 GAME 游戏 Find the differences! 找出不同之处!

Student A, look at the picture on page 81. Student B, look at the picture on page 82. (Don't look at your partner's page!) Find the differences.
 学生 A 看第 81 页的图画。 学生 B 看第 82 页的图画。
 (不要看你同伴的那一页!) 找出不同之处。

Section B

B 部分

1a Match the words with the pictures.

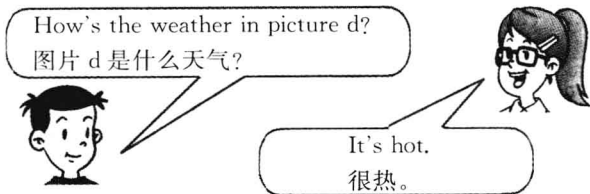
将单词与图片联系起来。

1. d hot^① 3. cool^② 5. humid
 热的 凉爽的 潮湿的
 2. cold^③ 4. warm^④
 冷的 温暖的



1b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions about the weather in the pictures above.
 就上面图片的天气进行问答。



- hot [hɑ:t], [hɒt] *adj.* 炎热的; 热的
- cool [ku:l] *adj.* 凉爽的
- warm [wɔ:(r)m] *adj.* 温暖的; 暖和的
- humid ['hju:mɪd] *adj.* 潮湿的; 湿润的
- cold [kəʊld] *adj.* 寒冷的; 冷的

Section B

① hot adj. 炎热的; 热的

> Stay at home today. It's too hot outside. 今天呆在家里吧, 外面太热了。
 > Here is some hot tea for you. 请喝点热茶。

拓展 hot *adj.* 辣的

> Pepper makes food hot. 胡椒使食品味辣。

② cold adj. 寒冷的, 冷的; 冷淡的, 不热情的

> It is colder today than yesterday. 今天比昨天冷。

> Do you have any cold drink? 有冰镇饮料吗?

> He is always cold to others. 他对别人总是很冷漠。

拓展 cold *n.* 冷; 感冒

> Put on your clothes, it is easy to catch a cold. 穿上衣服, 现在很容易感冒。

搭配 catch/get/have a cold 着凉, 伤风

提示 为进一步记忆 cold 的一词多义, 请点击下框“图解助记”。

③ cool adj. 凉爽的

> It is cool here. 这里很凉爽。

拓展 cool *adj.* 酷的; 冷静的

> He is so cool in his black jacket. 他穿上黑色夹克衫的样子很酷。

> She keeps cool in the exam. 她在考试中保持冷静。

助记 谐音: [英]cool—[汉]酷

提示 对比记忆:

{ cold 冷的, 寒冷的 → 冷淡的, 不热情的
 cool 凉的, 凉爽的 → 冷静的, 沉着的

④ warm adj. 温暖的; 暖和的

> Florida is much warmer than New York. 佛罗里达比纽约温暖多了。

> The poor girl has no warm clothes in winter. 这个可怜的小女孩冬天没有保暖的衣服。

拓展 warmth *n.* 暖和, 温暖; 热烈, 热情

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”, 了解天气的冷暖变化。

参考答案

- 1a 1. d 2. a 3. e 4. b 5. c

非常点拨

图解

助记 cold 的一词多义



图解

助记“冷暖变化”



2a Listen. Look at the chart. Write what Maria and Sam answer to "How's it going?"
听录音。看图表。 写出玛丽亚和萨姆对“你最近怎么样?”的回答。

	How's it going? 情况怎么样?	What are you doing? 你在干什么?	How's the weather? 天气怎么样?
Maria 玛丽亚			
Sam 萨姆	great 好极了		

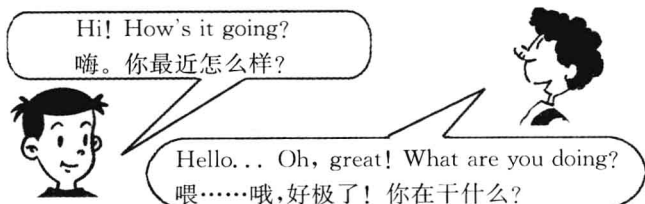
2b Listen again. Write what Maria and Sam answer to "what are you doing?"
再听一遍。 写出玛丽亚和萨姆对“你在干什么?”和“天气怎么样?”的
and "How's the weather?"
回答。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Role play a conversation between Maria and Sam. Ask and answer these
角色表演: 玛丽亚和萨姆之间的对话。 提出并回答这些问题:

questions: How's it going? What are you doing? How's the weather?

你最近怎么样? 你在干什么? 天气怎么样?



3a Yuan Yuan is reporting for CCTV's *Around The World* show. Underline the
园园在为中央电视台世界各地栏目作报道。 在人们正在
things that people are doing. (Circle) the words that describe the weather.
做的事情下面划线。 在描述天气的单词上画圈。

Thank you for joining CCTV's *Around The World* show. Today, we're
感谢你收看中央电视台世界各地节目。 现在,我们在
in Australia. It's a (beautiful), sunny day! There are many people here on
澳大利亚。 天气很好,阳光灿烂! 许多人在这儿度假。
vacation. Some are taking photos. Others are lying on the beach. Look at
有些人在照相, 还有些人躺在海滩上。 看这群

- vacation [və'keɪʃən], [və'keɪʃn] n. 假期; 休假
- on vacation 在度假中; 在假期
- lie [laɪ] v. (现在分词 lying) 平卧; 躺
- look at 看; 朝...看
- take a photo 拍照
- beach [bi:tʃ] n. 海滩



5 on vacation 在度假中; 在假期中

- > She is in Italy on vacation now. 她现在在意大利度假。
- > The children are on vacation. 孩子们正在放假。

联想 take a vacation at/in 在...度假
go on vacation 去度假

拓展 vacation n. 假期; 休假

提示 holiday, vacation 可以通用, 都是指工作日以外的休息时期, 但不包括周末或仅仅一天的休息日。holiday 多用于英国英语, vacation 多用于美国英语。

6 take/have a photo/picture 拍照

- > Her brother likes taking photos. 她的哥哥喜欢拍照。

“给某人/某物拍照”用 take a photo of sb./sth.

- > Look at the beautiful flowers. Let's take a photo of them. 看那些美丽的花。让我们把它们拍下来吧。

7 lie vi. 平卧; 躺

- > Walter is lying in the grass. 沃尔特躺在草地上。

- > The dog is lying on the ground. 狗躺在地上。

搭配 lie down 躺下

拓展 lie v. 说谎 n. 谎话, 谎言

搭配 tell (sb.) a lie/lies (对某人) 说谎

lie 现在分词为 lying.

如何记忆 lie 的一词多义? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

8 look at 看; 朝...看

- > We are looking at the blackboard. 我们正在看黑板。

- > He is looking at the picture. 他在看着那幅画。

look at 表示“看”的动作; see 表示“看见”的结果; watch 表示“看, 观看”正在运动或变化的事情。

提示 为更好、更准确地记忆各种“看”, 请点击下框“图解助记”。

参考答案

- 2a Maria: pretty good
Sam: great
- 2b Maria: I'm visiting my grandmother. Hot and humid and sunny.
Sam: I'm having a party. Terrible. Cold and raining.



一言辨异

The man lying in bed is telling a lie. 躺在床上那个人在说谎。

——第一个 lie 是动词“躺”; 第二个 lie 是名词“谎话, 说谎”。



图解

助记各种“看”



非常点拨



this **group** of people playing beach volleyball. They look **cool**! I am **surprised**^⑨ 打沙滩排球的人。他们看上去真棒! 我很吃惊, they can play in this **heat**^⑩. This is a very interesting place. The people are 他们能在这么热的天气里打球。这是一个很有意思的地方。这些人的确 really very **relaxed**! 很放松!

3b Look at the pictures of France. Then fill in the blanks.
看法国的图片。然后填空。

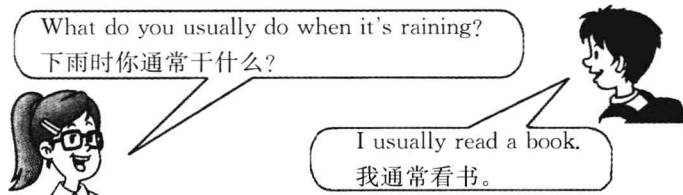


It's **winter** in France. The weather is windy ⁽¹⁾ and ⁽²⁾. People 这是法国的冬天。刮着风而且 。人们穿 are wearing ⁽³⁾ and **scarfs**. But **everyone**^⑪ is **having a good time**^⑫. Friends 着 , 戴着围巾。但是人人都很开心。朋友们 are ⁽⁴⁾ in restaurants. In a ⁽⁵⁾, a musician is ⁽⁶⁾ and some boys 在餐馆里 。在 , 一位歌手在 , 一些男孩在 ⁽⁷⁾. One **man** is ⁽⁸⁾ a ⁽⁹⁾. 。有个人在 一个 。

3c Imagine you work for CCTV's *Around China* show. Write what the weather is like in your hometown and what the people are doing.
想象你在为中央电视台祖国各地栏目工作。描述一下你家乡的天气和人们在干什么。

4 SURVEY 调查

Ask your classmates what they do in different kinds of weather. Make a list.
询问你的同学们在不同的天气时干什么。列一张表。



- **group** [gru:p] *n.* 团体; 组
- **cool** [ku:l] *adj.* (口)令人满意的; 绝妙的
- **surprised** [sə(r)'praɪzd] *adj.* 感到惊讶的
- **heat** [hi:t] *n.* 热; 热度 • **relaxed** [rɪ'læksɪd] *adj.* 放松的; 得到休息的
- **winter** ['wɪntə(r)] *n.* 冬季
- **scarf** [skɑ:(r)f] *n.* (*pl.* scarfs 或 scarves) 围巾
- **everyone** ['evriwʌn] *pron.* 每个人
- have a good time 玩得高兴; 过得快乐
- **man** [mæn] *n.* 男人; 人; 人类

⑨ **surprised** *adj.* 感到惊讶的

▶ I'm surprised at his words. 我对他的话感到吃惊。

▶ He is surprised to find the house empty. 他惊讶地发现房子空了。

联想 surprising *adj.* 使人惊奇的

▶ It's a surprising news. 这是个令人吃惊的消息。

思考 你知道 surprised 与 surprising 的区别吗? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

⑩ **heat** *n.* [U] 热; 热度

▶ You can feel the heat of the sun. 你可以感到太阳的热气。

▶ What is the heat of the water? 水的温度如何?

拓展 heat *v.* 加热

▶ The sun heats the earth. 太阳给地球热量。

⑪ **everyone** *pron.* 每个人

▶ Everyone here speaks English very well. 这里的每个人英语讲得都很好。

▶ Good afternoon, everyone! 大家下午好!

注意 everyone 意义和用法与 everybody 相同, 但是 everybody 较为口语化。

提示 请点击下框“一言辨异”, 学习 everyone 与 every one 的区别。

⑫ **have a good time** 玩得高兴; 过得快乐

▶ We always have a good time in the summer holiday. 我们暑假通常过得很愉快。

▶ I have a good time in the university. 我在大学里十分愉快。

联想 “玩得痛快, 过得愉快”还有如下表达:

- have a wonderful time
- enjoy oneself
- have fun

参考答案

- 3b (1) windy
- (2) cold
- (3) coats
- (4) eating/drinking/meeting
- (5) park
- (6) playing the guitar
- (7) are playing football
- (8) taking
- (9) photo

非常点拨

一言辨异

My father is **surprised** at the **surprising** news. 我父亲对这个令人震惊的消息感到惊讶。

——某人对某事感到震惊, 用 surprised; 而事物本身令人惊讶则用 surprising。

一言辨异

Everyone is here, so **every one** of us has a chance to speak at the meeting. 大家都到了, 因此每个人都有机会在会上畅所欲言。

——everyone 只指人, 不与 of 短语连用; every one “每个”, 既指人, 又指物, 可与 of 连用。

Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。 在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | | |
|---|--|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> sunny
阳光灿烂的 | <input type="checkbox"/> cloudy
多云的 | <input type="checkbox"/> snowing
下雪的 | <input type="checkbox"/> raining
下雨的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> windy
刮风的 | <input type="checkbox"/> cold
寒冷的 | <input type="checkbox"/> hot
热的 | <input type="checkbox"/> cool
凉爽的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> warm
温暖的 | <input type="checkbox"/> humid
潮湿的 | <input type="checkbox"/> terrible
可怕的 | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Yuan Yuan from CCTV is interviewing people in five different places. Fill

中央电视台的园园正在采访五个不同地方的人。 填写
in the chart below.

下面的表格。

How's the weather? 天气怎么样?	What are they doing? 他们在干什么?

参考答案

- 3 a. sunny playing the guitar
b. windy walking
c. cold cooking
d. hot writing a letter
e. raining playing football

语法在线

点击名题

How 引导的特殊疑问句

1. 询问身体状况:

- How are you now? 你现在怎么样?
- I'm fine, thanks. 很好,谢谢。

2. 询问天气:

- How's the weather in your hometown? 你家乡的天气怎么样?
- It's raining. 正在下雨。

3. 询问情况进展:

- How's it going? 情况怎么样?
- Great. 好极了。

Yes/No 问句及简短回答

用 yes/no 来回答的疑问句叫做一般疑问句,口语中若无特殊含义,句尾用升调。

- Are your parents doctors? 你父母都是医生吗?
- Yes, they both are. 是的,他们都是。
- Do you enjoy yourself in our city? 在我们城市,你玩得痛快吗?
- No, not very much. 不,不太痛快。

1. — do you prefer to study?

- I prefer to study in a group.
A. How B. Why
C. When D. Where

【解析】题意:“你喜欢如何学习?”“我更喜欢小组一起学习。”根据答语中 study in a group,可知询问学习的方式,故选 how。why 表示原因;when 表示时间;where 表示地点。

【答案】A

2. —Do you like playing basketball?

- , I don't like it.
A. Yes B. No
C. OK D. Of course

【解析】题意:“你喜欢打篮球吗?”“不,我不喜欢。”根据答语可知“不喜欢”,故选 B 项。

【答案】B

非常点拨

真题回放

(2009·贵州)

- are you going on a visit to Beijing?
—We'll drive there.
A. When B. How C. Why

【解析】B。题意:“你打算怎样去参观北京?”“我会开车去那儿。”由答语 drive 得知提问交通方式,故用 how。where 提问地点;why 提问原因。

真题回放

(2009·重庆)

- Can you play the piano?
—Yes, I . I often practise it on weekends.
A. needn't B. need C. can't D. can

【解析】D。题意:“你会弹钢琴吗?”“是的,我会。我经常在周末练习。”提问 can 引导的疑问句,肯定回答用 “Yes, I can.”,否定回答用 “No, I can't.”。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- The weather is _____, so we should stay at home.
A. good B. nice C. bad D. fine
- _____, Martin!
— Thank you, Bob.
A. Glad to see you B. I'm sorry
C. Excuse me D. Have a good time
- How is the weather today?
— Oh, lots of people are wearing gloves and coats, so I guess it is _____.
A. hot B. rainy C. cold D. warm
- Dave is helping Mum _____. They're making dumplings.
A. cook B. study C. speak D. lie
- They're lying on the beach and talking happily.
— How _____ they are!
A. surprised B. bored
C. interested D. relaxed
- How is the weather in Beijing?
— It's _____.
A. rain B. cloud C. sunny D. wind
- _____ are singing, _____ are dancing.
A. Some; other B. Some; others
C. Other; some D. Others; some
- _____?
— Pretty good.
A. What's your mother B. How's it going
C. What's the time D. How do you do
- It's raining and the ground is _____.
A. humid B. cold C. cool D. warm
- Hello! _____ Ann. Is that Linda speaking?
— Sorry, she is out.
A. This is B. I'm C. That is D. She is
- _____
— It's sunny. _____
A. How nice it is today!
B. How about going out?
C. What do you want to do?
D. What's the weather like?
- They are all _____ vacation now.
A. at B. of C. on D. for
- Tigers often eat people.
— That sounds _____.
A. really B. terrible C. well D. usually
- Thanks for _____ us at the party.
A. join B. joins C. joining D. to join
- _____ winter it is very cold _____ Moscow.
A. In; at B. In; in C. On; in D. In; on

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个

选项中选择最佳的一项。

One day, a Chinese student went to study English in England. His family name was Sun. It was the 1 as the English word "sun" in spelling. England is a country with 2. It is often cloudy or misty(多雾的), and it 3 a lot, so the people there don't get much sunshine in the whole year.

When the Chinese student arrived in London, a tall 4 policeman with a long face 5 his passport(护照). He 6 it was pronounced just like the 7 word "sun", so he said to the Chinese student, "I see your name is Sun. You are wanted here(这里需要你)."

The Chinese student was surprised. But 8 a moment the policeman smiled. "Mr Sun, you bring sunshine 9 England. So we don't want you to 10."

- A. different B. same C. like D. the same
- A. good weather B. bad weather
C. fine weather D. snow
- A. rains B. raining C. rainy D. is raining
- A. Chinese B. English C. Japanese D. American
- A. opened B. looked C. say D. gave
- A. think B. thought
C. know D. is thinking
- A. Chinese B. French
C. English D. American
- A. before B. behind C. after D. on
- A. at B. to C. for D. in
- A. stay B. be here C. go away D. stay here

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

A

In England, people don't often talk to each other when they travel. If you get on a bus, or in a train, you will sometimes see people sitting and looking out of the window. Other people will be reading books or newspapers. But Englishmen often talk about the weather because they can experience four seasons in one day. When you meet English people, they often start a conversation by talking about the weather. So when you meet somebody in England, you can say, "Nice weather for the time of year!"

"But it was a little cold yesterday," Somebody may answer.

"But it will get a bit warm later," you can say.

Talk like this, and the Englishman will think, "How friendly you are!"

根据短文内容, 判断句子正(T)误(F)。

- Some English people read books or newspapers in a train.
- English people often talk about newspapers in a train or on a bus.
- When you meet an Englishman, you can start a conversation by talking about weather.
- Englishmen often talk about weather because it is changeable(多变的).

5. If you talk to English people about the weather, they usually think you are friendly.

B

Wilson is from Australia, and he is now in Xinjiang—the west part of China. He is talking with his father on the phone. His father is not in China. He is in Sydney. Wilson thinks the weather in Xinjiang is very funny. In the morning it is very cold, but it turns warm at noon time. It is also very dry there, but the fruit is very sweet because there is a lot of sunshine(阳光) there. Wilson's father is going to hike(徒步旅行) the Blue Mountains with his wife because it is warm and sunny in Sydney now. Wilson hopes they will have a great time and keep healthy.

根据短文内容,从每小题后所给的四个选项中选择正确答案。

6. What does Wilson do?
 - A. A student.
 - B. A reporter.
 - C. A teacher.
 - D. It's not mentioned in the passage.
7. What's the weather like in Xinjiang?
 - A. Cold.
 - B. Dry.
 - C. Warm.
 - D. Cold, dry and warm.
8. How is the weather in Sydney now?
 - A. Sunny.
 - B. Sunny and warm.
 - C. Warm.
 - D. Sunny and cool.
9. What does the word "sweet" mean in the text?
 - A. 酸的
 - B. 甜的
 - C. 苦的
 - D. 咸的
10. Which of the following is TRUE?
 - A. Wilson's parents are very healthy.
 - B. Wilson works in a school in Xinjiang.
 - C. Wilson doesn't like the weather in Xinjiang.
 - D. Wilson's father will come to China.

IV. 任务型阅读(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

The weather in Australia is not the same as ours, because the seasons there are different. When it is winter in China, it is summer there. Australia is a southern country. It is in the south of the world. June, July and August are the winter months; September, October and November are spring; the summer is in December, January and February; and March, April and May are the autumn months.

A very large part of the country has no rain at all. The east coast(海岸) has rain all the year. There are no dry months there. The southeast winds blow all the year. They bring rain from the sea. There is not much rain on the west side. The southeast part of Australia has summer rain from the southeast winds. They only blow here in summer.

根据短文内容简要回答问题。

1. Is the weather in China different from the weather in Australia?

2. Which part of the world is Australia in?

3. December, January and February is the winter in Australia as ours, isn't it?

4. Is there much rain on the west side?

5. Which part of Australia has summer rain from the

southeast winds?

V. 单词拼写(共 10 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. There are some students _____ (学习) in the classroom.
2. Look! There is a dog _____ (躺) under the chair.
3. It is _____ (潮湿的), not dry.
4. The weather is _____ (热的) in Wuhan in summer.
5. Does it _____ (下雪) in winter here?
6. Many people are t_____ photos in front of the Great Wall.
7. It's r_____. I can't go out.
8. —How is it going?
—P_____ good!
9. What bad w_____ it is today!
10. There are many people in America on v_____.

VI. 句型转换(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. He looks cool. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ he _____ cool?
2. There is a lot of rain today in Xinxiang. (改为同义句)
_____ very _____ today in Xinxiang.
3. It is cloudy in Beijing today. (对划线部分提问)
_____ the weather like in Beijing today?
4. What's the weather like today? (改为同义句)
_____ the weather today?
5. My sister is listening to the teacher. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ your sister _____ to the teacher?

VII. 翻译填空(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

1. 看!每个孩子都玩得很开心。
Look! Every child _____ a good time.
2. 我对那件事感到吃惊。
I _____ it.
3. —你情况怎么样? —还行。
—_____ it _____ with you?
—Not _____.
4. —那儿正在下雪吗?
—不,在下雨。
—_____ it _____ there?
—No, It's _____.
5. —伦敦的天气怎么样?
—雪很大。
—_____ the weather _____ London?
—It's very _____.

VIII. 书面表达(满分 15 分)

现在你们家乡是什么季节?天气怎么样?很冷?很热?还是……在这样的天气里人们都在干什么呢?根据提示写一篇介绍你们家乡的天气的短文。(60 词左右)

参考词组及短语:

winter, windy and cold, wear thick clothes, have a good time in the park, playing football, taking photos

期中测试题

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- I want to see koalas. Because they are _____.
A. ugly B. cloudy C. cute D. terrible
- _____ do you want to see giraffes first?
— Because they are very interesting.
A. When B. Where C. How D. Why
- The tall student _____ the school basketball team is also good at _____ tennis.
A. on; play B. at; playing
C. on; playing D. at; play
- His mother likes _____ the newspaper, but his father enjoys _____ TV.
A. seeing; watching B. looking at; watching
C. watching; seeing D. reading; watching
- Is she reading books at home now?
— _____.
A. Yes, she is B. No, she is
C. Yes, she does D. No, she doesn't
- Is your home _____ the neighborhood?
A. to B. in C. near D. on
- We have great fun _____ volleyball on the beach.
A. play B. playing
C. to play D. to playing
- What language does she speak?
— She speaks _____. Because she's from London.
A. Chinese B. English
C. Japanese D. French
- Bruce _____ physics. He thinks it's boring.
A. enjoys B. loves C. dislikes D. likes
- What _____ he doing now?
— He is _____ a newspaper.
A. is; seeing B. does; looking
C. does; watching D. is; reading
- I like music, because it is _____.
A. boring B. relaxing
C. difficult D. interested
- The tree is _____ our school.
A. between B. in front
C. across from D. on front of
- Be _____, Ann! Mum is sleeping.
A. quite B. quiet C. quick D. noisy
- There _____ a boy and two girls under the tree.
A. has B. have C. are D. is
- I think action movies are _____ exciting.
A. a kind of B. a lot of
C. kind of D. lots of

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个

选项中选择最佳的一项。

Kate is an old woman. She works at a 1 as a doctor. She works 40 2 a week. She 3 to work at nine o'clock in the 4 and stops at five o'clock in the afternoon. After working doctors and nurses all go 5. Some take the bus home and some take taxi home. Kate 6 home. She likes walking very much and she 7 near the hospital. At five-thirty, Kate gets home. She 8 her dinner at six. Then she watches TV and reads books. At ten o'clock, she goes to bed. 9, she is very 10 but she likes her job.

- A. hospital B. bank C. shop D. factory
- A. seconds B. minutes C. hours D. months
- A. begins B. begin
C. beginning D. to begin
- A. afternoon B. morning
C. evening D. night
- A. house B. shopping C. home D. to school
- A. walks B. goes C. runs D. walk
- A. living B. live C. lives D. to live
- A. buys B. has C. cook D. have
- A. Sometimes B. Today
C. Everyday D. Day
- A. relaxed B. tired C. excited D. tire

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

Come and see the Indian elephants and the new tigers from America. The bears are waiting to meet you, and the monkeys from China are waiting to throw (扔) things at you. The lovely dogs from Australia are waiting to laugh at you, the giraffes from Brazil are waiting to look down on you.

Tickets	Opening time
Grown-ups: \$ 2.00	9:00 a. m. — 4:00 p. m.
Children: Over 12; \$ 1.00	except Friday
Under 12; Free	10:00 a. m. — 3:00 p. m.

Keep the zoo clean!

Don't touch, give good food or go near the animals.

- How many kinds of animals are talked about in the passage(短文)?
A. Four. B. Five. C. Six. D. Seven.
- Now Mr. Smith is in the zoo with his two sons, one aged 14 and the other 10. How much are the tickets together (总共)?
A. \$ 4.00 B. \$ 2.00 C. \$ 3.00 D. \$ 1.00
- Which of the following is the visiting time?
A. 8:30 a. m. Monday. B. 9:30 a. m. Friday.
C. 3:00 p. m. Sunday. D. 5:00 p. m. Tuesday.
- From the passage we can guess the animal "giraffe" must

be very _____.

- A. fat B. long C. strong D. tall
5. Which of the following should we do in the zoo?
- A. To give some food to the fish.
B. To touch the monkey on the head.
C. To throw things everywhere.
D. To keep the zoo clean.

B

I'm an English teacher in an international school. I have students from all over the world. Let me tell you about my favorite students.

Mike comes from New York. He loves Rap Music. In his free time, he often watches action movies and practices kung fu. Today he takes part in a kung fu competition(比赛).

Kate is another of my favorite students. She is a beautiful, tall girl from London. She is a good student. Sometimes she can't sleep because she thinks too much about her lessons. Her favorite sport is swimming. She says she wants to be a doctor. I hope she can succeed!

6. After reading this passage, can you tell us where are the students from?
- A. New York. B. London.
C. Paris. D. All over the world.
7. What country does Kate come from?
- A. America. B. England.
C. France. D. Japan.
8. What kind of movies does Mike like?
- A. Action movies. B. Documentary.
C. Comedy. D. Thrillers.
9. Who joins the kung fu competition?
- A. Kate. B. Most of students.
C. Mike. D. The teacher.
10. Why can't Kate fall asleep?
- A. She wants to swim.
B. She is always studying.
C. She wants to be a doctor.
D. She thinks too much about her lessons.

IV. 任务型阅读(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

Tom is a student. He likes zoology(动物学) very much. Last term he thought he would do well in the final exam because he worked hard all term. But, when they had the exam, the teacher brought a birdcage with a bird in it into the classroom. The birdcage was covered with(被……覆盖) a piece of cloth. The students could only see the bird's legs and feet. The teacher said, "Please write down the bird's name. This is your exam question."

Tom was very angry because he didn't know the name of the bird. He gave his paper to the teacher without writing his name. The teacher said to him, "What's your name, please?" Tom stood there, showed one of his legs to the teacher, and said, "look! Can't you guess?"

根据短文内容,判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

- Tom is a student. He likes zoology.
- Tom didn't work hard last term.
- Tom was angry because he didn't like the bird in the birdcage.
- When the teacher saw Tom's leg, he know his name.

5. Tom was a foolish(愚蠢的) student.

V. 单词拼写(共 10 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

- The boy can speak _____ (法语).
- The pandas are _____ (友好) to people.
- Bob is from _____ (加拿大). He lives in Toronto.
- I like the _____ (安静) street.
- Turn _____ (左边) and you can find an old hotel before you.
- W _____ to my house.
- People like policemen, but t _____ don't like them.
- You can borrow some books from the l _____.
- What l _____ does she speak?
—Chinese.
- Where does Lucy l _____?
—In Sydney.

VI. 翻译填空(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

- 我是一个护士,但我想当一名医生。
I am a nurse, but I _____ to _____ a doctor.
- 她正在打扫房间。
She _____ her room now.
- 超市在邮局的对面。
The supermarket is _____ the post office.
- 许多人在这里度假。
There are many people here _____.
- 我的工作很有趣,但有几分危险。
My work is interesting but _____ dangerous.

VII. 句型转换(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

- They are cleaning the room. (对划线部分提问)
_____ they _____?
- She is a nurse. (对划线部分提问)
_____ she _____?
- Where is your friend from? (改为同义句)
Where _____ your friend _____ from?
- He plays sports every day. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ sports every day?
- How's the weather today? (改为同义句)
_____ the weather _____ today?

VIII. 书面表达(满分 15 分)

请根据表格所提供的信息,写一份有关个人理想的调查报告,并告诉大家你的梦想是什么,60 词左右。

Name	Want to be	Reason
Tina	teacher	likes helping children
Ann	reporter	likes talking with people
Johnson	policeman	It's an exciting job
Dick	actor	It's an interesting job

Unit 7

What does he look like?
他长得什么样?

Language Goal: Describe people's looks

语言目标: 描述人们的外貌

英汉对照

考点注释

Section A

A部分

1a Match the words with the people in the picture. You can use some letters more than once.
把单词与图片中的人物联系起来。有些字母可重复使用。

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. short hair _____
短发 | 2. curly ^① hair _____
卷发 |
| 3. long hair _____
长发 | 4. straight hair _____
直发 |
| 5. tall ^② _____
高的 | 6. short _____
矮的 |
| 7. medium height _____
中等个子 | 8. thin _____
瘦的 |
| 9. heavy ^③ _____
重的 | 10. medium build _____
中等体形 |

- hair [her], [heə] *n.* 头发; 毛发
- curly ['kɜ:(r)li] *adj.* 卷曲的; 卷毛的
- straight [streɪt] *adj.* 直的; 笔直的
- tall [tɔ:l] *adj.* 高的
- medium ['mi:diəm] *adj.* 中等的
- height [haɪt] *n.* 高度
- thin [θɪn] *adj.* 瘦的
- heavy ['hevi] *adj.* 重的
- build [bɪld] *n.* 体格; 体形

本页生词

Section A

① curly *adj.* 卷曲的; 卷毛的

▶ This plant has long curly leaves. 这种植物长着长的卷曲的叶子。

▶ The man has curly hair and wears glasses. 这个男人卷头发, 戴着眼镜。

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”, 学习各种发型。

② tall *adj.* 高的

▶ This is a tall man. 这是个高个男子。

▶ John is only four feet tall. 约翰身高只有四英尺。

提示 tall 与 high 都意为“高的”, 但用法不同。tall 指从底到顶的距离, 指人的身高只用 tall, 反义词为 short; high 指从地面到最高点, 指海拔高度只用 high, 反义词为 low。请点击下框“图解辨异”。更好地理解它们的不同之处。

③ heavy *adj.* 重的

▶ The bag is too heavy. 这个袋子太重了。

▶ How heavy is the baby? 这个婴儿有多重?

拓展 heavily *adv.* 很重地; 沉重地

参考答案

- 1a 1. c 2. f 3. a 4. a 5. d
6. h 7. e 8. b 9. g 10. e

非常点拨



图解

助记“各种发型”



图解

辨异 tall, high



straight hair 直发



wavy hair 波浪卷



curly hair 卷发



high (位置)高



tall 高(高度, 身高)



1b Listen and fill in the blanks in the picture above. Can you find Amy's friend?
听录音并在上面图片里填空。你能找到艾米的朋友吗?

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

One of the people in the picture above is your friend. Describe your friend.
上幅图片中有一个人是你的朋友。描述你的朋友。

Your partner will find him or her.

你的同伴会找到他或她。

A: What does your friend look like?

你的朋友长得什么样子?

B: She is of medium build^⑤, and she has long hair.

她中等身材,留长发。

2a Listen and circle "is" or "has".

听录音并且圈出“is”或“has”。

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>is</u> / has tall
长得高 | 6. is / has long hair
留长发 |
| 2. is / has heavy
长得胖 | 7. is / has short
长得矮 |
| 3. is / has curly hair
留卷发 | 8. is / has of medium build
一副中等身材 |
| 4. is / has of medium height
中等个子 | 9. is / has short hair
留短发 |
| 5. is / has thin
长得瘦 | |

2b Listen again. Fill in the chart.

再听一遍。填表。

	is 是	has 有
David 戴维	tall 高 heavy 胖	curly hair 卷发
Sally 莎莉		
Peter 彼特		

• like [laɪk] prep. 像;如同

4 "What does he look like? 他长什么样子?"用来询问人的长相。

—What does he look like? 他看上去什么样?

—He is short and heavy. 他又矮又胖。

拓展 like prep./conj. 像;如同

Do it like this. 像这样做。

Mary's dress is red, like mine. 玛丽的衣服是红色的,和我的一样。

I cannot speak English like you do. 我英语讲得不像你那样好。

提示 as 也有“像,如同”的意思,它与 like 有什么区别呢?请点击下框“一言辨异”。

5 really adv. 确实,实际上;很,十分

He is really kind to us. 他对我们真得很好。

You drive really fast. 你车开得确实很快。

It's really cold today. 今天很冷。

在非正式的英语会话中,尤其是美国英语中,形容词和副词前常用 real,不用 really.

You did real well. 你做得的确很好。

6 be of medium build 是“be+of+名词”结构,通常可以和“be+形容词”结构互换使用。

He is of medium height. (=He is medium high.) 他中等个子。

What he said is of great help. (=What he said is very helpful.) 他说的话很有用。

参考答案

- 1b 1. tall 2. curly 3. hair
- 2a 1. is 2. is 3. has 4. is
5. is 6. has 7. is 8. is 9. has
- 2b David: tall curly hair heavy
Sally: medium height long hair thin
Pete: short medium build short hair

非常点拨

一言辨异

He comes **as** a manager, but he works **like** a worker. 他是作为经理来的,但却像工人一样地工作。

—as 作介词时意为“作为,如同”,侧重同一性,意味着属同一类或完全相似;like 作介词意为“像”,仅侧重于比较,不意味着属于同一类或完全相似。

真题回放

(2008·广西北海)

—What does your Chinese teacher _____?

—He is tall with short hair.

A. look for B. look at C. look after D. look like

【解析】D。题意:“你的语文老师长什么样子?”“他很高,头发很短。”look like“像……,似……”,符合题意。look for“寻找”;look at“看”;look after“照顾”。

3 PAIRWORK 结对活动

Describe Lily's new friend.

描述莉莉的新朋友。

A: Do you know I have a new friend in Class Five?

你知道我在五班有个新朋友吗?

B: What does she look like?

她长什么样子?

A: She has (1) and (2).

她有(1)和(2)。

B: Is she tall?

她高吗?

A: No, she's (3).

不,她(3)。

B: I think I know her. She **always** wears a red (4) and (5) shoes.

我想我认识她。她总穿红色的(4)和(5)鞋子。

A: Yes, that's her. Her name is Nancy.

是,就是她。她的名字叫南希。

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What do you look like? 你长什么样子?	I'm short. I'm thin. 我又矮又瘦。
What do they look like? 他们长什么样子?	They're of medium height. 他们中等个子。
What does he look like? 他长什么样子?	He is of medium build. 他中等身材。
What does she look like? 她长什么样子?	She is tall. She has curly hair. 她高个子,卷发。

3a Read the descriptions of the four classmates. Match them with the pictures.

阅读关于四个同学的描述。

把他们与图片联系起来。



① Wang Lin is the **captain** of the basketball **team**. He's tall and he is of medium build. He has short straight hair. Wang Lin is very **popular**.

王林是篮球队的队长。他个子高,中等身材。他头发又短又直。王林很受欢迎。

- **always** ['ɔ:lweɪz] *adv.* 总是;始终
- **captain** ['kæptɪn] *n.* 队长;首领
- **team** [ti:m] *n.* 队;组
- **popular** ['pɔ:pjʊlə], ['pɒpjʊlə] *adj.* 受欢迎的;通俗的;流行的

⑦ **always** *adv.* 总是;始终

▶ The door is always open. 门总是开着。

▶ He looks well as always. 他看起来像往常一样健康。

▲ **not always** 表示部分否定,意为“未必,不一定”。

▶ The rich are not always happy. 有钱人未必幸福。

👉 你还知道哪些表示频度的词? 请点击下框“图解助记”。

⑧ **captain** *n.* [C]队长;首领(形近词: **capital** 首都)

▶ He is the captain of the school football team. 他是学校足球队的队长。

▶ We chose him as captain. 我们选他当队长。

▲ 英语中,表示头衔、职位的名词,如 **captain**, **chairman**, **president**, **director** 等,在句中作补语、表语和同位语时,其前不能用定冠词。

⑨ **team** *n.* [C]队;组

▶ Which team do you play for? 你在哪个队效力?

👉 **搭配** a team of 一群,一组

▲ **team** 作主语时,如强调整体,谓语用单数;如强调成员,谓语用复数。

▶ Our team is/are playing a match now.

👉 我们队(全体队员)正在进行比赛。具有类似 **team** 语法功能的词汇,你能记起哪些? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

⑩ **popular** *adj.* 受欢迎的;通俗的;流行的

▶ Football is very popular. 足球很受人喜爱。

▶ He speaks in popular language. 他用通俗的语言讲话。

▶ The song is very popular. 这支歌很流行。

👉 **搭配** be popular with... 受到……的欢迎
popular music/songs 流行音乐/歌曲

参考答案

- 3 1. long hair 2. big eyes 3. short
4. dress 5. white
- 3a a. Mike (4) b. Xu Qian (3)
c. Mary (2) d. Wang Lin (1)

非常点拨

图解

助记频度副词

always (总是)	日一二三四五六日一二三四
usually (通常)	— —
often (常常)	— —
sometimes (有时)	— —
never (从不)	— —

归纳拓展

形单意双的名词

形式为单数,但意义可以用做单数或复数的集合名词常见的还有 **family**“家庭”和 **class**“班”。

▶ His family is large. 他的家是个大家庭。

▶ His family are all waiting for him. 他的一家人都在等他。

▶ This class consists of 45 pupils. 这个班由45个学生组成。

▶ This class are reading English now. 这个班的学生在读英语。

② Mary is thin and she is of medium height. She has short curly **blonde** hair. She's **good-looking** but she's a **little bit** quiet. 玛丽长得瘦,中等个子。她有一头短而卷曲的金色头发。她长得不错,但有点内向。

③ Xu Qian loves to tell **jokes**. She's short and a little bit heavy. She has beautiful long black hair. She **never** **stops** talking! 许倩喜欢讲笑话。她身材矮小且有点胖。她有一头漂亮的黑色长发。她总是说个没完。

④ Mike is a good student. He's very tall. He has curly **brown** hair and is of medium build. He likes reading and playing chess. 迈克是一个好学生。他很高。他有一头卷曲的棕色头发,中等身材。他喜欢阅读和下棋。

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Student A, write the names in the box next to the people in the picture.

学生 A 将方框中的姓名写在图中人物的旁边。

Student B, ask questions to find the people.

学生 B 提出问题找这些人。

Paul	Cathy	Yu Jie	Zhou Hai	Li Jun	Peter
鲍尔	卡西	俞杰	周海	李军	皮特

What does Paul look like?
鲍尔长什么样子?



He's tall and he has brown hair.
他是高个子,一头棕发。

4 GAME 游戏 Mystery Student 神秘的学生

Describe someone in the class. Ask your classmates to guess who you're describing. 描述班上的某个人。让你的同学猜猜你描述的是谁。

- blonde [blɑ:nd], [blɒnd] *adj.* 金黄色的
- good-looking [ˌgʊd'loʊkɪŋ] *adj.* 漂亮的
- bit [bɪt] *n.* 一点儿;少许
- a little bit 一点儿;少许
- joke [dʒɔ:k] *n.* 笑话;玩笑
- never ['nevə(r)] *adv.* 决不;从不
- stop [stɔ:p], [stɒp] *v.* 停止;终止
- brown [braʊn] *adj.* 棕色的;褐色的

① good-looking *adj.* 漂亮的

My friend Liu Fang is a good-looking girl. 我的朋友刘芳是一个漂亮的女孩。

beautiful 和 pretty 可用于妇女、孩子和事物,不用于男人;pretty 侧重“娇小”,因此常用来形容小孩或青年女子;good-looking 可以用于男人和女人,均用来形容外表一般性“好看”,一般不用于事物。

拓展 为便于加深记忆以上各词,请点击下框“巧学助记”。

② a little bit 一点儿,少许

Now I have got a little bit of success. 现在我取得了一点成就。

拓展 a little 一点点; a bit 有点儿; not a little 很,十分; not a bit 一点也不

I'm not a bit hungry but I'm not a little tired. 我一点也不饿,但我很累。

a bit 在修饰名词时须加 of, a little 则不需要。

There's a bit of bread and a little water left. 还剩下一点面包和一点水。

③ never *adv.* 决不;从不

He never gets up late on Sunday. 星期天他从不晚起。

Better late than never. (谚)迟做总比不做好。

(a) never 放到句首表示强调时句子要倒装。

Never will I forget you. 我永远不会忘记你。

(b) never 通常置于实义动词之前, be 动词之后。

He is never late for class. 他从不迟到。

④ stop *v.* 停止;终止,阻止

Please stop eating and listen to me. 请停止吃东西,听我说。

The game is stopped because of the rain. 比赛因为下雨而停止。

拓展 stop sb. (from) doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

No one can stop us from going camping. 谁也阻挡不了我们去野营。

拓展 stop 后面既可接动词不定式也可接动名词,两种结构有何区别? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

参考答案

- 3b 1. What does Cathy look like?
She is thin and she has blonde hair.
- 2. What does Yu Jie look like?
He is of medium height and he has black and short hair.
- 3. What does Zhou Hai look like?
He is short and he has black hair.

巧学助记

助记 good-looking, pretty, beautiful

Most of the girls are good-looking, some are pretty, but very few are beautiful. 这些姑娘大都好看,其中有些标致可爱,但称得上美丽动人的寥寥无几。

一言辨异

When the teacher came into the classroom, the students stopped talking, the teacher said, "Boys and girls, stop to write a letter to your parents." 老师走进教室,学生们停止了说话,老师说:"同学们,停下来给你们的父母写封信。"

——stop to do sth. 表示“停下来做另一件事”, stop doing sth. 表示“停止做某事”。

非常点拨

This **person** is of medium height. She has short hair.
这个人中等个子。 她有一头短发。



Section B

B部分

1a Match the words with the pictures.

把单词与图片联系起来。

1. d beard 络腮胡
2. glasses 眼镜
3. black hair 黑头发
4. blonde hair 金发



1b Make sentences about famous musicians or actors. Fill in the blanks.

依据有关著名音乐家或演员的外表造句。 填空。

1. Jackie Chan has black hair. 成龙是黑发。
2. has a beard. 有络腮胡。
3. wears glasses. 戴眼镜。
4. has blonde hair. 有一头金发。

2a Listen and write Johnny Dean's and Tina Brown's jobs in the chart.

听录音然后在表中写出约翰尼·迪安和蒂娜·布朗的工作。

2b Listen again. What do Johnny and Tina look like? Complete the chart.

再听一遍。 约翰尼和蒂娜长什么样子? 完成图表。

2c GROUPWORK 小组活动

Describe what your favorite musician, actor and athlete look like.

描述你最喜欢的音乐家、演员和运动员长什么样子。

My favorite musician is John Jackson. He is tall and thin. He has short
我最喜欢的音乐家是约翰·杰克逊。他又高又瘦,有一头短而卷曲的棕
curly brown hair.
色头发。

3a Read the magazine article about Johnny Dean. What did Johnny look like before?

阅读杂志上有关约翰尼·迪安的文章。 约翰尼以前是什么样子?

What does he look like now? Fill in the blanks in the chart.

他现在是长什么样子? 在表中填空。

Johnny Dean's New Look!

约翰尼·迪安的新形象!

- person ['pɜ:(r)sən] n. 人; 人物
- look [lʊk] n. 外表; 外貌
- beard [bɪəd], [bɪəd] n. 胡须
- glasses ['glæsɪz], ['glɑ:sɪz] n. (pl.) 眼镜



15 person n. [C] 人; 人物

▶ We need a person to help us. 我们需要一个人帮助我们。

▶ He is an important person for them. 对他们来说, 他是个重要的人物。

搭配 the first person 第一人称
in person 亲自

拓展 person adj 私人的

PC=personal computer 个人的电脑



person 和 people 都可作“人”讲, 有何区别呢? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

Section B

1 glasses n. [pl.] 眼镜

▶ He often wears a pair of glasses. 他经常戴着一副眼镜。

▶ I need glasses when I read. 我看书时需要戴眼镜。

拓展 glass n. [U] 玻璃; [C] 玻璃杯

◆ These glasses are all made of glass. 这些杯子都是用玻璃做的。

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”, 学习 glasses 与 glass。

2 look n. [C] 外表; 外貌

▶ Now the shop has a new look. 现在商店焕然一新。

▶ She has her father's good looks. 她有父亲漂亮的容貌。

▲ looks 尤指吸引人的相貌, 容貌。

拓展 look n. 神色

▶ There is a surprised look on her face. 她的脸上露出惊奇的神色。

参考答案

- 1a 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a
- 2a Johnny Dean; pop singer
Tina Brown; movie actor
- 2b Johnny Dean; tall, thin, long curly hair, glasses
Tina Brown; medium height, long blonde hair

非常点拨

妙辨异同 person, people

person 可数名词, 表示“某人”时, 着重个人方面。
people 集合名词, 复数, 意为“人们”时着重全体, 没有复数形式, 但有复数含义。

▶ The car may only carry four persons. 车上只能容纳四个人。

▶ There are many people in the hall. 大厅里有很多人。

图解

助记 glasses 与 glass



glass [U]
玻璃



two glasses [C]
两只玻璃杯



a glass of orange
一杯橙汁



a pair of glasses
一副眼镜

4 GAME 游戏 What does he / she look like? 他/她长

什么样子?

Draw a picture of a person. Don't show the other students

画一个人的像。 不要给其他同学看。

Tell your classmates what the person looks like. They listen

告诉你的同学们那人长什么样子。 他们听并

and draw the person. Compare their drawings to yours. The

画出那个人。 然后把这些图画跟你的作比较。

person with the best drawing wins!

画得最像的为胜者。

He's of medium height. He has curly black hair. He is thin.

他中等个子。 他的头发卷而黑。 他长得瘦。

He wears glasses.

他戴眼镜。

Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。 在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> short hair
短发 | <input type="checkbox"/> curly hair
卷发 | <input type="checkbox"/> long hair
长发 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> tall
高 | <input type="checkbox"/> short
矮、短 | <input type="checkbox"/> thin
瘦 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> heavy
胖 | <input type="checkbox"/> black hair
黑发 | <input type="checkbox"/> brown hair
棕色头发 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> blonde hair
金发 | <input type="checkbox"/> straight hair
直发 | <input type="checkbox"/> medium build
中等身材 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> wear
穿,戴 | <input type="checkbox"/> medium height
中等个子 | <input type="checkbox"/> beard
络腮胡 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> glasses
眼镜 | | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Look at the picture below. Old Henry and his neighbors

看下面的图片。 老亨利和他的邻居

are performing in a play. Describe what the people look like.

在一出戏里表演。 描述这些人的样子。

1. What does Old Henry look like?

老亨利是什么样子?

2. What does Teeny look like?

小矮人是什么样子?

3. What does Hugeman look like?

巨人是什么样子?

4. What does Dreamer look like?

梦想者是什么样子?

5. What does Wiseman look like?

智者是什么样子?

参考答案

- 3a Before Hair: long, curly
Glasses: funny
Now Hair: short, straight
Glasses: doesn't wear
- 3b (1) long hair (2) short hair
(3) jeans (4) T-shirt
(5) shorts (6) glasses
- 3c My sister Li Hua is a tall girl and she is of medium build. She has short, straight hair. she always wears dark clothes and sports shoes. she seldom wears sunglasses and skirt. She looks like a naughty boy.

Self Check

参考答案

- 3 1. He's short. He is of medium build.
- 2. She's short and thin, and has long, black hair.
- 3. He's tall, heavy, and has curly brown hair.
- 4. She's thin, of medium height, and has short, curly blonde hair. She's wearing earrings.
- 5. He's medium height, and wears glasses.



- Teeny ['ti:ni] 小矮人(teeny, 极小的)
- Hugeman ['hju:dʒmən] 巨人(huge, 巨大的; 庞大的)
- Dreamer ['dri:mə(r)] n. 梦想家(dreamer, 空想家; 梦想家)
- Wiseman ['waizmən] 智者(wise, 有智慧的; 聪明的)



语法在线

What+助动词+sb. look like?

询问“……长什么样子?”用“What+助动词+sb. look like?”其中 what 充当了宾语。look like 表示“看起来像……”,like 后接宾语。

- ▶ —What does your brother look like? 你弟弟长得什么样子?
—He is tall and thin. 他又高又瘦。
- ▶ —What does the woman look like? 那个女子长相如何?
—She is of medium height and very beautiful. 她中等身材,很漂亮。

联想 询问某人的相貌和气质、性格时通常用“What+be+sb. like?”

- ▶ —What is he like? 他怎么样?
—He is handsome and honest. 他既英俊又诚实。
- ▶ —What's your grandparents like? 你的祖父母怎么样?
—They're kind and friendly. 他们心地善良,而且待人友善。

用于宽泛描述的形容词

描述性形容词置于名词之前,常对名词进行描述,省略之后也不会影响所修饰名词的本意。

- ▶ a tall boy 一个高个子男孩
- ▶ a heavy bag 一个沉重的书包

提示 归纳记忆常见形容词的反义词:

- | | | | |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| bad 坏的 | —good 好的 | big 大的 | —small 小的 |
| cold 冷的 | —hot 热的 | cool 凉爽的 | —warm 温暖的 |
| dry 干燥的 | —wet 潮湿的 | fat 胖的 | —thin 瘦的 |
| heavy 重的 | —light 轻的 | tall 高的 | —short 矮的 |

点击名题

1. — _____ does Clark look like?
—He is tall and has brown hair.
A. What B. How C. Who
【解析】题意:“克拉克长什么样?”“很高,棕色头发。”“What does sb. look like?”是由疑问代词 what 引导的一种固定句式,询问某人的外貌。

【答案】A

2. — _____ ?
—He's a tall man with short hair.
A. How is he
B. What does he like
C. What is he
D. What does he look like

【解析】题意:“他长什么样?”“他是个留短发的高个子男人。”询问外貌长相常用“What do/does/did+主语+look like?”。常用“What be+主语?”来询问职业。

【答案】D

3. —What does your Chinese teacher _____ ?
—He is tall with short hair.
A. look for B. look at
C. look after D. look like

【解析】题意:“你的语文老师长什么样子?”“他很高,头发很短。”look like“像……,似……,外表特征是……”,符合题意。look for“寻找”;look at“看”;look after“照顾”。

【答案】D

学法指导

兴趣是学好英语的动力支持

兴趣是最好的老师。有了兴趣,就有了动力。不过,兴趣应该不断发展和强化,并逐步转化为稳定的学习动机,这样才能成为你学习英语的持久动力。否则,就可能是“时冷时热”,或“三天打鱼,两天晒网”。

兴趣的培养可从以下几方面入手:

1. 培养对英语学习的积极态度。应充分认识学习英语的重要性和必要性,对英语这种语言持积极的态度。
2. 善于发现英语学习中的乐趣。
3. 有意识地培养和发展自己的兴趣。如阅读一些趣味材料。

单元同步测试

》》 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 《《

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- She is a girl.
A. good-looking B. good-look
C. looking-good D. look-good
- What does he look like?
—He is very .
A. kind B. tall C. friendly D. interesting
- My sister is too , so she wants to be slim(苗条的).
A. heavy B. tall C. short D. thin
- My father glasses every day.
A. puts on B. wear C. wears D. is wearing
- Please remember the door when you leave.
A. close B. closing
C. to closing D. to close
- Cathy short but she long hair.
A. is; is B. has; is C. is; has D. has; has
- She has hair.
A. black long beautiful B. beautiful black long
C. beautiful long black D. black beautiful long
- She likes playing piano but I like playing volleyball.
A. the; the B. /; the
C. the; / D. /; /
- Who is the man standing at the door?
— knows him. He never comes here.
A. Somebody B. Anybody
C. Nobody D. Everybody
- It's 12:00 at night, Jack. You'd better stop .
You should get up early tomorrow morning.
—Mum, but the TV show is so interesting.
A. to sleep B. sleeping
C. to study D. studying
- Mr Miller has brown hair now, but I don't like his new .
A. build B. look C. height D. face
- The boy black hair a blue coat.
A. has; has B. with; in
C. has; wears D. with; wears
- She always a red coat and black shoes.
A. dresses B. puts on C. wears D. has
- Why are you so good at speaking English, Mary?
—I keep speaking English at home.
A. sometimes B. never

- C. always D. seldom

15. —Your hair is very beautiful.

- A. Don't say so B. Not beautiful
C. Thank you D. You're welcome

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Johnny is twelve 1 old. He is very tall and he loves 2 basketball. His parents 3 from Anqing. Sally is small and she 4 glasses. She 5 long and curly hair. She likes 6. She 7 hard. Dave 8 of medium height. He enjoys 9 computer games. He loves to tell 10.

- A. year B. years C. / D. years'
- A. play B. plays C. playing D. to play
- A. is B. are C. comes D. be
- A. not wear B. do wear
C. wears D. wear
- A. has B. have C. is D. are
- A. sing B. singing C. sings D. not sing
- A. works B. working
C. to work D. doesn't work
- A. are B. be C. is D. am
- A. plays B. playing C. to play D. play
- A. jokes B. joke
C. to joke D. not joke

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

A

There is a nice girl in our class. She is in Row Five. She is thirteen years old. She is not tall and she is not short. She is a little bit fat. She has a round face like an apple. She has two big black eyes and a small nose. Her mouth is big, but her ears are small. Her hair is short and black. She likes red. She is often in red clothes but today she is wearing a yellow sweater, blue trousers and brown shoes. She likes little animals. She has a little black dog in her home. She and the dog are good friends. Who is she?

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

- The girl is .
A. 12 years old B. 13 years old
C. 30 years old D. 20 years old
- The girl is .
A. short B. tall C. fat D. thin
- Her face is .
A. round B. long C. black D. white

4. The colour of her eyes is _____ .
A. blue B. black C. red D. green
5. Her good friend at home is _____ .
A. a person B. a dog C. a cat D. a boy

B

Different people have different colors of skin (皮肤). Some have black skin, some have yellow skin. There is a woman in Alaska. Her skin is orange. It is almost (几乎) the color of orange juice. How does her skin become orange? She eats lots of tomatoes, carrots and oranges. Because she eats too many orange things, her skin becomes orange.

The woman doesn't want her skin to be orange, so she goes to see the doctor. The doctor says, "Stop eating orange things. Eat some green things."

根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。

6. The story happens (发生) in Alaska.
7. The woman has orange hair and skin.
8. The woman eats lots of orange things but not oranges.
9. The woman goes to see the doctor because she doesn't like the color of her skin.
10. The doctor tells her to eat some green things.

任务型阅读 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 10 分)

Do you know S. H. E. ? It's a singing group from Taiwan, China. There are three lovely girls in it. They are Selina, Hebe and Ella. They are very popular.



Lots of young people like Selina because she is very beautiful. She has long straight hair. She is of medium height. Ella is really cool! She looks like a boy. She is of medium height and a little bit heavy. She always has short straight hair and wears a jacket and pants. Many fans think she sings very well. Hebe is a nice girl. She isn't tall and she is of medium build. She has long straight hair. Sometimes she wears a cute hat.

根据文章内容填写表格。

Name	Hair	Build
Selina	long straight	1. _____
Ella	2. _____	3. _____
Hebe	4. _____	5. _____

单词拼写 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. My brother doesn't wear _____ (眼镜).
2. His hair is _____ (卷曲的).
3. I _____ (总是) get up at 6:00 in the morning.
4. Wang Li is the _____ (队长) of the football team.
5. She is beautiful, so she is very _____ (受欢迎的).
6. He is not heavy, he is t _____ .

7. I'm new here, so n _____ knows me.
8. I want to visit you, but I can't r _____ your address (地址).
9. She likes singing, so she wants to be a s _____ .
10. Kate n _____ stops talking.

VI. 翻译填空 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 10 分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

1. 他喜欢每天下棋。
He likes _____ every day.
2. 他喜欢留着胡须。
He likes _____ .
3. 我叔叔是一名体格健壮的运动员。
My uncle is a player _____ a strong _____ .
4. 那个长头发的女孩是谁?
Who is the girl _____ ?
5. 他很有趣, 喜欢说笑话。
He is very _____ and loves _____ .

VII. 句型转换 (共 5 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 10 分)

根据要求完成句子, 每空一词。

1. Michael Jackson is tall and thin? (对划线部分提问)
_____ Michael Jackson _____ ?
2. She has a red coat. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ she _____ a red coat?
3. Everybody knows me. (改为否定句)
_____ me.
4. I think he is a good student. (改为否定句)
I _____ he _____ a good student.
5. Li Lei is not too heavy or too thin. (改为同义句)
Li Lei is _____ .

VIII. 书面表达 (满分 15 分)

假如你是 Ann, Amy 是你的同桌 (deskmate), 你们两个在相貌上有很大不同。请根据下表中提供的信息, 写一篇 60 词左右的英语短文, 描述一下你和你同桌的外貌特征。

Name	The color of eyes	Hair	Build
Ann	Blue	brown, long, straight	short and heavy
Amy	Brown	brown, short, curly	tall and thin

Unit 8

I'd like some noodles.

我想吃些面条。

Language Goal: Order food

语言目标: 订餐



英汉对照



考点注释

Section A

A部分

1a

Match the words with the foods.

将单词与食品联系起来。

Hello, I'd like some **noodles**.^①

嗨,我想要些面条。

What kind of noodles would you like?^②

你想要什么样的面条?

**Beef** and tomato noodles, please.

牛肉西红柿面。

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. noodles <u> c </u> | 2. beef <u> </u> | 3. mutton <u> </u> |
| 面条 | 牛肉 | 羊肉 |
| 4. chicken <u> </u> | 5. cabbage <u> </u> | 6. potatoes <u> </u> |
| 鸡肉 | 卷心菜 | 土豆 |
| 7. tomatoes <u> </u> | | |
| 西红柿 | | |

• would [wʊd] modal v. 表示意愿

• noodle ['nu:dl] n. 面条(常用复数)

• beef [bi:f] n. 牛肉

• mutton ['mʌtn] n. 羊肉

• cabbage ['kæbɪdʒ] n. 洋白菜;卷心菜

• potato [pə'teɪtəʊ] n. 土豆;马铃薯

• I'd=I would

本页生词

非常点拨



一言辨异

I would like to go out for a walk; I like walking in the rain. 我想出去散散步,我喜欢在雨中行走。

—like 的意思是“喜欢”,后面可接不定式,也可接动名词;would (should) like 的意思是“想要……,希望……”,后应接带 to 的不定式。

Section A

① “I'd like (to do)...我想要……”,would like to do 意为“想要……,希望……”。would like 中的 would 在句中通常和前面的主语缩写成 'd。

> He would like to see the headmaster. 他想见见校长。

> We'd like to stay here for a few days. 我们想在这儿呆几天。

【搭配】

would like { sth. 想要某物
to do sth. 想要干某事
sb. to do sth. 想要某人干某事



would like 与 like 后接动词形式有何不同? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

② “What kind of... would you like?”是在口语中很常见的句型,常用来询问某人想要某种类型的东西。

> What kind of books would you like? 你想要什么样的书?

> What kind of movies would you like to see? 你想看什么样的电影?

参考答案

- 1a 1. c 2. a 3. g 4. d
5. e 6. f 7. b

真题回放

(2008·贵州)

—What are you going to do this weekend?

—I'd like _____ my parents.

A. to visit B. visit C. visiting

【解析】A。题意:“这个周末你打算做什么?”“我想探望我的父母。”would like 后跟不定式,故答案选 A。

1b Listen and check (✓) the noodles that the person orders.

听录音并在那人所点的面条前打✓。

- | | | |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Special ^① 1 | Special 2 | Special 3 |
| 特色菜 1 | 特色菜 2 | 特色菜 3 |

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Then make your own conversations.

练习下面的对话。 然后自己编对话。

A: Hello, I'd like some noodles.

嗨,我想要些面条。

B: What kind of noodles would you like?

你想要什么样的面条?

A: Beef and tomato noodles, please.

牛肉西红柿面。

2a Listen and check (✓) the names of the foods you hear.

听录音并在你听到的食品名称前打✓。

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. _____ noodles
面条 | 2. _____ beef
牛肉 | 3. _____ mutton
羊肉 |
| 4. _____ chicken
鸡肉 | 5. _____ tomatoes ^①
西红柿 | 6. _____ cabbage
卷心菜 |
| 7. _____ potatoes ^②
土豆 | | |

2b Listen again and fill in the blanks.

再听一遍,并且填空。

What **size**^③ **bowl**^④ of noodles would you like? And what kind of noodles

你想要多大碗的面条?

你想要什么样的面条?

would you like?

I'd like a _____⁽¹⁾ bowl of noodles.

我想要一份 _____ 碗的面条。

I'd like _____⁽²⁾, _____⁽³⁾ and _____⁽⁴⁾ noodles, please.

我想要 _____, _____ 和 _____ 面。

I'd like a _____⁽⁵⁾ bowl.

我想要一个 _____ 碗。

I'd like _____⁽⁶⁾ and _____⁽⁷⁾ noodles, please.

我想要 _____ 和 _____ 面。

- **special** ['speʃəl] *n.* 特色菜
- **size** [saɪz] *n.* 大小;尺寸
- **bowl** [bəʊl] *n.* 碗;一碗的容量

③ special *n.* [C] 特色菜

What's today's special? 今天的特色菜是什么?

Thursday's special was steak. 星期四的特色菜是牛排。

拓展 special *adj.* 特别的

This is a special day. 今天是特别的日子。

④ tomato *n.* 西红柿

potato *n.* 土豆

He likes eating tomatoes. 他喜欢吃西红柿。

Potato grows in many parts of the world. 马铃薯在世界许多地区都有种植。

tomato 和 potato 在变成复数形式时要加-es。

提示 英语中以 o 结尾的名词变复数时,有些直接加-s,有些需加-es。请点击下框“归纳拓展”,学习一下它们的变化规律吧。

⑤ size *n.* [U,C] 大小;尺寸

What size is the room? 这个房间多大?

—What size shoes do you take? 你穿几号的鞋?

—I take size 8 in shoes. 我穿8号鞋。

This shirt is your size. 这件衬衫是你这号尺寸的。

What's the size of the park? 这个公园有多大?

⑥ bowl *n.* [C] 碗;一碗的容量

There are some bowls on the table. 在桌上有些碗。

Give him a bowl of rice. 给他一碗米饭。

提示 常见的既可作名词又可作量词的词有: bag, cup, bottle 等。

参考答案

- 1b special 1
- 2a 1 2 4 5 6 7
- 2b (1) large
(2) chicken
(3) potato
(4) cabbage
(5) medium
(6) beef
(7) tomato

非常点拨

归纳拓展

以 o 结尾复数加-es 的名词

- Negro — Negroes 黑人
- hero — heroes 英雄
- echo — echoes 回声
- mosquito — mosquitoes 蚊子
- mango — mangoes 芒果
- Negro — Negroes 黑人

归纳拓展

以 o 结尾复数加-s 的名词

- video — videos 录像
- radio — radios 收音机
- zoo — zoos 动物园
- photo — photos 照片
- piano — pianos 钢琴
- bamboo — bamboos 竹子

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask your partner, "What kind of noodles would you like?"

问你的同伴“你想要什么样的面条?”

Use the information from 2a.

运用 2a 中的信息。

What kind of noodles would you like?
你想要什么样的面条?



I'd like beef noodles, please.
我想要牛肉面。



Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

		Look! 注意
What kind of noodles would you like? 你想要什么样的面条?	I'd like beef noodles, please. 我想要牛肉面。	I'd = I would
What size bowl of noodles would he like? 他想要多大碗的面条?	He'd like a small / medium / large bowl of noodles. 他想要一个小碗/中碗/大碗的面条。	He'd = He would
Countable nouns 可数名词	Uncountable nouns 不可数名词	Countable and uncountable nouns 作可数名词也能作不可数名词
bowls, dumplings, apples, 碗 饺子 苹果 strawberries, oranges 草莓 橙子	beef, mutton, broccoli 牛肉 羊肉 花椰菜	chicken, salad, 鸡肉 沙拉 ice cream, cabbage, 冰淇淋 卷心菜 onion 洋葱

3a Complete the conversation below. Then practice the conversation.

完成下列对话。 然后练习对话。

- A: What kind of noodles do you have?
你们有什么样的面?
B: Oh, a medium bowl, please.
哦,请上一份中碗的。
C: OK, I'd like mutton and potato noodles, please.
好的,我想要羊肉土豆面。
D: I'd like some noodles, please.
我想要些面条。
E: What sizes do you have?
你们有多大碗的?
- Can I help you? D
你想要点什么?
 - What kind of noodles would you like? _____
你想要什么样的面?
 - We have beef, chicken, mutton, cabbage, potato,
我们有牛肉、鸡肉、羊肉、卷心菜、土豆、西红柿……
tomato... _____
 - Sure. And what size would you like? _____
好的。那你想要多大碗的呢?

5. We have large, medium and small bowls. _____
我们有大、中、小碗的。

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Role play. Student A works in a noodle house. Take an order for noodles. Student B is the customer. Decide the size of bowl and the ingredients for the noodles.
角色扮演。学生 A 在一家面馆工作。接受一份面条订单。学生 B 是顾客。决定碗面的大小和面条的配料。

4 What kind of noodles would you like?
你想要什么样的面条?

Work in small groups. Find out which group members would like the noodles below. Write their names on the cards above the noodles.
分小组活动。弄清哪几个小组成员要下面的面条。把他们的名字写在面条上面的卡片上。

Annie, what kind of noodles would you like?
安妮,你想要哪种面?



I'd like beef and carrot noodles.
我想要牛肉胡萝卜面。



chicken and cabbage 鸡肉和卷心菜	mutton and potato 羊肉和土豆
tomato and egg 西红柿和鸡蛋	beef and carrot 牛肉和胡萝卜

参考答案

- 2c A: I'd like some noodles.
B: What kind of noodles would you like?
A: I'd like mutton noodles.
B: What size bowl of noodles would you like?
A: I'd like a large one.
- 3a 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. E 5. B
- 3b A: Hello, Noodle House. What can I do for you?
B: Hi, I'd like some noodles.
A: What size bowl of noodles would you like?
B: A large one.
A: What kind of noodles would you like?
B: I'd like chicken and cabbage noodles.
A: What's your phone number?
B: 85687753.
A: And your address?
B: 366 Bridge Street.
A: OK. You'll get it soon.

• large [la:(r)dʒ] adj. 大的; 宽广的

• he'd = he would



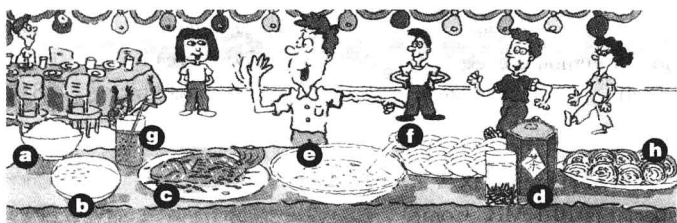
Section B

B部分

1a Match the words with the pictures.

将单词与图片联系起来。

- | | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>g</u> orange juice | 4. <u> </u> green tea | 7. <u> </u> onions |
| 橙汁 | 绿茶 | 洋葱 |
| 2. <u> </u> dumplings | 5. <u> </u> rice | 8. <u> </u> fish ² |
| 饺子 | 米饭 | 鱼 |
| 3. <u> </u> porridge | 6. <u> </u> soup ¹ | |
| 粥 | 汤 | |



1b Circle the things you like in the picture above. Make an "X" next to the things you don't like.

在上面的图片中圈出你喜欢的食品。在你不喜欢的食品旁打X。
Then tell your partner what you like and what you don't like.
然后告诉你的同伴你喜欢什么,不喜欢什么。

I like dumplings, fish and orange juice.
我喜欢饺子、鱼和橙汁。



I don't like onions, green tea or porridge.
我不喜欢洋葱、绿茶和粥。



2a Listen and circle the words you hear in 1a.

听录音并且圈出你听见的 1a 中的单词。

2b Listen again and fill in the order form on page 81.

再听一遍并且填写 81 页上的订单。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Student A works at a dumpling house. Look at page 82. Ask questions and fill in the order form. Student B orders food from Student A. Order dumplings

学生 A 在一家饺子店工作。看 82 页。提问并且填写订单。
学生 B 向学生 A 订购食品。订购 1a 中的饺

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------|
| • juice [dʒu:s] n. 果汁; 果汁饮料 | • dumpling ['dʌmplɪŋ] n. 饺子 |
| • porridge ['pɔ:ridʒ], ['pɒrɪdʒ] n. 粥; 糊 | |
| • tea [ti:] n. 茶; 茶叶 | • green tea 绿茶 |
| • rice [raɪs] n. 米; 稻; 米饭 | • soup [su:p] n. 汤; 羹 |
| • onion ['ʌnɪən] n. 洋葱 | • fish [fɪʃ] n. 鱼; 鱼肉 |



Section B

1 soup n. [U]汤;羹

Would you like some chicken soup? 你想来点鸡汤吗?

搭配 clear/thick soup 清/浓汤

提示 一般情况下,表示“喝汤”用 eat soup,但若强调不使用汤匙而用杯子喝汤时,用 drink soup. 请点击下框“图解助记”加深记忆。

2 fish n. [C]鱼;[U]鱼肉

He catches a/a lot of fish today. 今天他抓到一条/许多条鱼。

We have fish and chips for dinner. 我们晚饭吃鱼和炸土豆条儿。

fish 单复数相同;fishes 指不同种类的鱼。



拓展 fish v. 捕鱼,钓鱼

搭配 go fishing 去钓鱼

提示 为迅速记牢 fish 的一词多义,请点击下框“巧学助记”。

参考答案

- 1a 1. g 2. f 3. b 4. d
5. a 6. e 7. h 8. c
- 2a dumplings, fish, soup, green tea, orange juice
- 2b Address: 15 Peace Road
Telephone number: 3982845
Order: Chicken, fish and cabbage, 16 mutton and carrot dumplings. Tomato soup. One large green tea and one small orange juice.
- 2c A: Hello, Dumpling House. Can I help you?
B: Yes, please, I'd like some dumplings.
A: What size bowl of dumplings would you like?
B: A medium one.
A: What kind of dumplings would you like?
B: I'd like dumplings with beef and onions.
A: Anything else?
B: No, Thanks. My phone number is 88868976. My address is 586 Main Street.
A: OK. You'll get them soon.

图解

助记 eat soup, drink soup



eat soup



drink soup

巧学助记

巧记 fish 的一词多义

Give a man two fish and he will eat for a day. Teach a man to fish and he will eat for the rest of his life.
授人以鱼,可食一日;授人以渔,可食一世。

非常点拨

and drinks from 1a.

子和饮料。

3a Read the newspaper ad. Fill in the blanks with the words in the box.

阅读报纸广告。 用方框中的词填空。

juice cabbage soup dumplings have ✓
果汁 卷心菜 汤 饺子 有

Tel: 834-8394

House of Dumplings!

饺子店!

At the **House of Dumplings**, we have ⁽¹⁾ some great specials!

在饺子店我们有特色饺子!

Special 1 has beef and onion, and is just 10 **RMB** for 15 dumplings. Special 特色款式 1 是牛肉洋葱饺子, 15 个仅售 10 元人民币。 特色款

2 is only 8 RMB for 15, and has ⁽²⁾ and mutton. Orange ⁽³⁾ is

式 2 是 羊肉饺子, 15 个仅售 8 元人民币。 橙汁 仅售

only 2 RMB. The dumpling and ⁽⁴⁾ lunch special is 10 RMB. Come

2 元人民币。饺子配 的特色午餐为 10 元人民币。 今天就

and get your ⁽⁵⁾ today!

来吃 吧!

3b Fill in the blanks below.

填空。

Dessert House



甜品屋

What kind of dessert would you like? We have two great new ⁽¹⁾.

你想要什么样的甜品? 我们有两种非常新的 ⁽²⁾。

1. Strawberry and ⁽³⁾  ice cream.




草莓和 冰激凌。

2. ⁽⁴⁾  and orange ⁽⁵⁾ .

 和橙子 。

And what size of dessert would you like? Small, ⁽⁶⁾, or large [®]?

你想要多大的甜品? 小号的, 还是大号的?

We also have ⁽⁷⁾  and ⁽⁸⁾  .

我们也有 和 。

3c Write your own ad for dumplings, noodles, drinks, and other foods you know.

写出饺子、面条、饮料和你所知道的其他食品的广告。

• **drink** [drɪŋk] *n.* 饮料

• **Tel abbr.** (= Telephone) 电话

• **RMB abbr.** 人民币

③ large adj. 大的; 宽广的

▶ It's a large room. 这是一间大房子。

▶ China is a large and beautiful country.

中国是一个幅员辽阔又美丽的国家。

提 请点击下框“妙辨异同”和“图解辨异”, 学习 large, big, great 的区别。

参考答案

- 3a 1) have 2) cabbage
3) juice 4) soup
5) dumplings

- 3b 1) dessert 2) specials
3) banana 4) apple
5) ice cream 6) medium
7) orange juice 8) green tea

学法指导

语法学习的核心方法在于建立清晰的体系之后各个击破。很多同学对语法深恶痛绝, 觉得无论如何也纠缠不清, 其根本原因就在于没有把语法由一坨糨糊变成清晰的体系。初中英语主要学习包含 10 大类词性的词法和基础句法。“Wow, one of the ugliest girls and he are dancing joyfully.”(哇, 最丑姑娘中的一个正在和他快乐地舞蹈。) 这个句子囊括了词法中的 10 种词性。明确了学习范围之后再逐个攻破就清晰多了。

非常点拨

妙辨异同

large, big, great

- large “大的”, 其反义词为 small。指面积之大。
big “大的”, 其反义词为 little。与 large 一样都指具体的事物, 还可表示伟大、重要等意思。
great “伟大的”, 除表示数量、体积之大外, 还可指抽象的事物或精神方面的东西。

图解

辨异 large, big, great



a large house a big man the Great Wall

4 PAIRWORK 结对活动

Read your partner's ad. Then order food and drinks from your partner.
阅读你同伴的广告。然后向他(她)订购食品和饮料。

What size bowl of noodles would you like?
你想要多大碗的面条?



I'd like a medium bowl of noodles, please.
我想要一份中碗的面条。



Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.
关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | | | |
|---|---|--|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> noodles
面条 | <input type="checkbox"/> beef
牛肉 | <input type="checkbox"/> mutton
羊肉 | <input type="checkbox"/> onion
洋葱 | <input type="checkbox"/> tomatoes
西红柿 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> potatoes
土豆 | <input type="checkbox"/> cabbage
卷心菜 | <input type="checkbox"/> chicken
鸡肉 | <input type="checkbox"/> dumplings
饺子 | <input type="checkbox"/> porridge
粥 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> large
大的 | <input type="checkbox"/> small
小的 | <input type="checkbox"/> medium
中号的 | <input type="checkbox"/> green tea
绿茶 | <input type="checkbox"/> rice
米饭 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> fish
鱼 | <input type="checkbox"/> orange juice
橙汁 | <input type="checkbox"/> soup
汤 | <input type="checkbox"/> would like
想要 | <input type="checkbox"/> bowl
碗 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> phone number
电话号码 | <input type="checkbox"/> address
地址 | | | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.
在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Make a menu for the week.
写出一周的菜单。

	Mon. 周一	Tues. 周二	Wed. 周三	Thurs. 周四	Fri. 周五
Breakfast 早餐	porridge, egg 粥 鸡蛋				
Lunch 中餐					
Dinner 晚餐					

Give reasons^① for your menu^②:
说出写这份菜单的理由:

- Mon. abbr. (=Monday) 星期一
- Tues. abbr. (=Tuesday) 星期二
- Wed. abbr. (=Wednesday) 星期三
- Thurs. abbr. (=Thursday) 星期四
- Fri. abbr. (=Friday) 星期五
- reason ['ri:zən] n. 原因;理由
- menu ['menju:] n. 菜单



Self Check

- ① reason n. [U, C] 原因;理由
- > I have no reason for it. 我没有理由这样做。
 - > Give me your reason for doing it. 告诉我你做这事的理由。
 - 搭配 by reason of 由于
 - ▲ (a) reason for (doing) sth. 中的 for 不可用 of 替代。但是习语 by reason of (由于) 中用 of 不用 for。
 - (b) 在英语中, reason 和 because 不应在一个句子中同时出现。
 - > What is the reason for being late? 什么原因使你迟到?
 - > The reason he is late is that he is ill. 他因病迟到。
 - 提示 请点击下框“巧学助记”, 学习 reason 的用法。
- ② menu n. [C] 菜单
- > You can choose any food on the menu. 菜单上的食物你可随意挑选。
 - > What's on the menu? 菜单上有什么菜?
 - 搭配 on the menu 在菜单上
 - 提示 list, program 有“单, 单子”的意思, 你想知道它们和 menu 的区别吗? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

参考答案

- 3 Mon.
Breakfast: bread, hot dog, milk
Lunch: rice, vegetable, apple
Dinner: dumplings with meat, soup, cake
 - Tues.
Breakfast: egg, bread, milk
Lunch: hamburgers, orange juice, hot dog
Dinner: rice, vegetable, tomato soup
 - Wed.
Breakfast: bread, hot dog, coffee
Lunch: rice, vegetable, steak
Dinner: porridge, steamed bread
 - Thurs.
Breakfast: bread, egg, milk
Lunch: pizza, salad
Dinner: beef noodles
 - Fri.
Breakfast: bread, porridge, milk
Lunch: rice, vegetable, egg
Dinner: beef noodles
- reasons
Because it can give me rich nutrients (营养).
It's good for my health, and it's easy to digest.

非常点拨

巧学助记

助记 reason 的用法

reason 做事很挑剔, 很少和 of 在一起, 但喜欢和 for 拉关系, 遇到 because 就躲避, 见了 that 则笑嘻嘻, 好像见了老知己。

妙辨异同

- | | |
|---------|------------------------------|
| | menu, list, program |
| menu | 专指餐馆里的“菜单”, 在计算机用语中被引申为“菜单”。 |
| list | 可泛指任何“单子”。 |
| program | 指“节目单, 戏单”, 在计算机用语中指“程序”。 |

语法在线

点击名题

What 引导的特殊疑问句

what 意为“什么”，可单独使用，也可放在名词前使用。在句中可作主语、宾语、表语、定语。

1. what 作主语

What makes you love your hometown so much? 是什么使你这么热爱你的家乡?

2. what 作宾语

What do you usually do on Sundays? 星期天你通常做什么?

3. what 作表语

What are your parents? 你父母是干什么的?

4. what 作定语

What interests do you have? 你有哪些兴趣?

▲ 比较 what 与 which

what 常泛指“哪一类”，which 常在具体的范围内进行选择。

What colour do you like? (没有指定选择的范围)你喜欢什么颜色?

Which colour do you like better, red or yellow? (在红色和黄色中进行选择)红色和黄色,你更喜欢哪一种?

would like 的用法

would 与 like 连用,表示希望、想要的意。其后可以直接跟名词或动词不定式 to do,表示请求或个人的想法、看法,使语气婉转。would 无人称、数的变化,语气比 want 更加委婉,多用于口语。

I would like Size "S". 我想要"S"号的。

对于 Would... like... 提出的要求或建议,肯定回答为"Yes, please. /I would like to."否定回答为"No, thanks."

—Would you like a cup of tea? 你想来杯茶吗?

—Yes, please. /No, thanks. 好的。/不用了,谢谢。

可数名词与不可数名词

1. 可数名词分为个体名词和集体名词:个体名词是用来指单个人或事物的名词,如: cab 出租车, kindergarten 幼儿园, computer 计算机;集体名词是用来指一群人或一些事物总称的名词,如: army 军队, police 警察, family 家庭, class 班级。

2. 不可数名词分为物质名词和抽象名词:物质名词是用来指无法分为个体的物质、材料的名词,如: water 水, wind 风, glass 玻璃, steel 钢铁;抽象名词是用来指人或事物的品质、情感、状态、动作等抽象概念的名词,如: honesty 诚信, love 热爱, silence 安静, life 生活。

3. 可数名词与不可数名词的转化:有些不可数物质名词在表达不同意义时,是可数名词。其复数形式的含义也发生变化。如: tea 茶—a tea 一杯茶—two teas 两杯茶—teas 不同种类的茶; beer 啤酒—a beer 一杯啤酒—two beers 两杯啤酒; coffee 咖啡—a coffee 一杯咖啡; food 食品—foods 各种各样的食品。

1. — is it?

—It's yellow.

A. How long B. How much
C. What time D. What color

【解析】题意:“它是什么颜色的?”“黄色。”根据答语表示颜色可知,用 what color 提问。how long 询问多长时间; how much 询问多少钱; what time 询问几点钟。

【答案】D

2. — does your father do?

—He is a policeman.

A. What B. Why C. How

【解析】题意:“你爸爸是做什么的?”“他是一位警察。”由回答可知问话应是询问职业,询问职业的表达方式为“What is sb.?”或“What does/do sb. do?”; why 提问原因; how 提问方式。根据题意可知答案选 A。

【答案】A

3. —Have you heard the good news?

—No, what ?

A. is it B. is there
C. are they D. are those

【解析】题意:“你听说了那个好消息了吗?”“没有,是什么?”it 代指上文提到的 good news, 谓语动词用单数。

【答案】A

4. —Would you like some bread for breakfast?

— . I'm full.

A. Yes, please B. Sure, I'd love to
C. No, thanks

【解析】题意:“早餐你想吃一些面包吗?”“不用了,谢谢。我饱了。”Would you like... 用于提出要求或建议,肯定回答为“Yes, please. /I would like to.”,否定回答为“No, thanks.”。根据答语 I'm full. 可知不需要了,应该使用否定答语。

【答案】C

5. —How much tea do you need, Mr Zhang?

— .
A. Two cups tea B. Two cup of teas
C. Two cups of tea

【解析】题意:“张先生,您需要多少茶?”“两杯。”tea 是不可数名词,表达数量时需借助表示数量单位的短语,其复数形式在单位量词上变化,故正确表达为 two cups of tea。

【答案】C

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·福建漳州)

—Would you like to go to see Beijing Opera with us now?

—That's all right. Maybe next time.

A. Sure, I'd love to. B. Sounds like a great idea.
C. I can't wait. Let's go. D. I'd love to, but I am busy.

【解析】D. I'd love to but... 是委婉拒绝别人的一种说法。

马学册 it'

不可数名词的用法记忆歌诀

无复数形式,作主语谓语句用单数,
其前不用 a 和 an, 修饰不用基数,
much, some 和 any 来修饰,
表数量用“计量+of”短语。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 ◀◀

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)
从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- Would you like to come to my birthday party?
—
A. That's all right B. Thank you
C. Yes, I'd like to D. I'm afraid
- your phone number?
—It's 834×××××.
A. How many B. How much
C. What D. What's
- Would you like to eat?
A. something B. anything
C. nothing D. everything
- Peter takes order a large bowl of noodles.
A. a; for B. an; with
C. an; for D. a; with
- Here are . You can drink them.
A. a cup of tea B. two bottles of juice
C. lots of potatoes D. some salad
- We want to buy two for the party.
A. box of apple B. boxes of apples
C. box of apples D. boxes of apple
- There some bread and cheese in the fridge.
A. is B. are C. have D. has
- What would you like?
—I'd like some .
A. soup B. potato C. juices D. cheeses
- The noodles are only 4 yuan a large bowl.
A. in B. on C. for D. of
- There are few in the fridge. Let's go and buy some carrots and cabbages.
A. vegetables B. fruits
C. fishes D. eggs
- juice do you have?
A. How B. How much
C. How many D. What about
- What bowl of noodles would you like?
—I'd like large bowl.
A. kind B. size C. colour D. big
- What would you like breakfast?
A. at B. on C. for D. in
- Do you like fruit?
—Yes, I like best.
A. potato B. chicken C. orange D. bread
- Can I help you?
—Yes, I'd like five and some pears.
A. potato B. tomatoes C. meat D. banana

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个

选项中选择最佳的一项。

Fish and chips, and Chinese 1 food are very popular in England. 2 they are less popular in the USA. In the USA, people 3 take-away food, too, like fried chicken. But the 4 popular kind 5 take-away food is the 6 . It 7 like bread with meat in it. Hamburgers are 8 . They are very popular in the world.

Chinese food 9 different tastes and 10 usually very delicious. It is also very popular in the world.

- A. good B. take
C. best D. take-away
- A. But B. And C. Or D. So
- A. ate B. eat C. eating D. eats
- A. many B. more C. most D. much
- A. for B. with C. about D. of
- A. meat B. bread C. beef D. hamburger
- A. looking B. look C. looks D. looked
- A. not delicious B. much delicious
C. delicious D. deliciously
- A. have B. had C. has D. having
- A. is B. are C. was D. were

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

In many English homes, people eat four meals a day: breakfast, lunch, tea and dinner. People have breakfast at any time from seven to nine in the morning. They eat eggs, bread and drink milk at breakfast.



Lunch comes at one o'clock. Afternoon tea is from four to five in the afternoon, and dinner is at about half past seven. First they have soup, then they have meat or fish with vegetables. After that, they eat some other things, like bananas, apples or oranges. But not all English people like that. Some of them have their dinner in the middle of the day. Their meals are breakfast, dinner, tea and all these meals are very simple(简单的).

- Many English people have meals a day.
A. two B. three C. four D. five
- English people may have for their breakfast.
A. tea and eggs B. eggs, bread and milk
C. tea and coffee D. bread, tea and eggs
- English people have lunch at .
A. anytime B. nine C. five D. one
- English people don't have for their dinner.
A. porridge B. bananas and apples
C. soup and meat D. meat and fish
- After dinner, people eat some .
A. eggs, bread or milk
B. bananas, apples or oranges

- C. bread, eggs or tea
D. dumplings, bread or ice cream

B

There are three new students in our class. They are Annie, Tony and Bob. Bob is from England. He likes hot dogs and juice. He also likes pizzas with olives and onions on it. Tony likes green peppers and cheese pizzas. He comes from America. He also likes Chinese food. He thinks Chinese food is healthy. Annie is an American girl. She lives with her mother in Shanghai. Her favorite pizza is with mushrooms, tomatoes and peppers on it. She doesn't like milk, but she has to drink it every day. Because her mother thinks milk is good for her.

6. What would Bob like to eat?

- A. Eggs. B. Milk. C. Hot dogs. D. Olives.

7. Who likes Chinese food?

- A. Tony. B. Annie.
C. Bob. D. Annie's mother.

8. What kind of pizzas would Annie like?

- A. With olives and onions.
B. With green peppers.
C. With mushrooms, tomatoes and peppers.
D. With cheese and milk.

9. Annie has to drink milk every day. Why?

- A. Because her mother likes milk.
B. Because she doesn't like it.
C. Because her mother buys milk every day.
D. Because milk is good for her health.

10. Which sentence is WRONG?

- A. Bob is an English boy.
B. There are three new students in the class.
C. Bob likes Chinese food, too.
D. The new students all like pizzas.

IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

It is Sunday. I never get up early on Sundays. I sometimes stay in bed until lunch time. Today is Sunday again. I get up very late. I look out of the window. It is dark outside. "What a day!" I think, "It's raining again." Just then, the phone is ringing. It is my aunt, Lucy. "I arrive by train," she says, "I'm coming to see you."

"But I'm still having breakfast," I say.

"What are you doing?" She asks.

"I'm having breakfast," I say it again.

"Dear me, do you always get up so late? It's one o'clock!"

根据短文内容,回答问题。

- Does the writer always get up early or late on Sundays?

- Does she arrive by train or on foot?

- What do I do when my Aunt is coming to my home?

- Is she coming to see him or not?

- Does the writer have breakfast at 1:00 p.m?

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

- We have some great _____ (特色菜) today.
- I'd like some _____ (果汁) for drink.
- Let's see what is on the _____ (菜单) today.
- I don't like _____ (洋葱) at all.
- They like _____ (粥) for breakfast.
- After dinner she likes drinking g_____ tea.
- M_____ is my favourite day of a week.
- I'm hungry. I'd like some n_____.
- We eat d_____ on Spring Festival.
- Would you like some d_____, tea or coffee?

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

- My father would like beef and potato noodles. (对划线部分提问)
_____ of noodles would your father like?
- We must drink eight glasses of water every day. (对划线部分提问)
_____ of water must we drink every day?
- He likes vegetables and fruits. (改为否定句)
He _____ vegetables _____ fruits.
- He wants to have a glass of juice. (改为同义句)
He _____ to have a glass of juice.
- I'd like a small bowl of noodles. (对划线部分提问)
_____ bowl of noodles would you like?

VII. 翻译填空(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

- 我爷爷每天早上只吃一小碗羊肉水饺。
My grandfather only eats a _____ dumplings with _____.
- 我们每个人都吃一碗中碗装的面条。
Each of us _____ a _____ of _____.
- 他想要喝瓶橙汁。
He wants a bottle of _____.
- 我想吃西红柿。
I'd _____.
- 他们正在煮牛肉面。
They are _____.

VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

又到周末了,你想为全家准备一顿晚饭。请根据表格中的内容写一篇短文,介绍一下你准备为家人做的食物。要求:句式正确,语句通顺;60词左右。

You	Father	Mother	Your cat
mutton and carrot noodles	rice, beef and potato, coffee	dumplings, vegetable salad, ice cream	fish soup

Unit 9

How was^① your weekend? 你的周末是怎样度过的?

Language Goal: Talk about recent past events

语言目标: 谈论过去的事情

英汉对照

考点注释

Section A

A部分

1a Match the activities with the pictures [a-f].

将活动与图片[a-f]联系起来。

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. did ^① my homework <u> d </u>
做作业 | 2. played soccer _____
踢足球 |
| 3. cleaned my room _____
打扫我的房间 | 4. went ^② to the beach _____
去海滩 |
| 5. played tennis _____
打网球 | 6. went to the movies _____
看电影 |
| a. _____ night
晚上 | b. Sunday _____
星期天 |
| d. Sunday _____
星期天 | c. Saturday _____
星期六 |
| e. Saturday morning _____
星期六上午 | f. _____ morning
早上 |

What did you do last weekend, Lucy?

露西,你上周末干了些什么?



Well, on Saturday morning, I played tennis.
噢,星期六上午我去打网球了。



1b Listen and write the day and "morning", "afternoon" or "night" below each picture.

- was [wəz, wɔ:z], [wɒz, wɒz] v. is 的过去式
- did [dɪd] v. do 的过去式
- went [went] v. go 的过去式

Section A

- ① was v. is 的过去式
- did v. do 的过去式
- went v. go 的过去式

He was a teacher last year. 去年他是一位老师。

We did our homework on time yesterday. 昨天我们按时做作业了。

My father went to America last week. 上周我爸爸去美国了。

动词的过去式用于过去时态中,表示过去存在的状态或发生在过去的动作。动词的过去式有规则变化,也有不规则变化。规则变化是在动词后加-d或-ed,不规则变化需要专门记忆。was, did 和 went 是常用的动词过去式不规则变化形式,要牢牢掌握。

提示 请点击下框“巧学助记”,学习动词过去式的变化口诀。

参考答案

- 1a 1. d 2. b 3. f
4. c 5. e 6. a
- 1b Picture a: Saturday night
Picture b: Sunday afternoon
Picture c: Saturday afternoon
Picture d: Sunday night
Picture e: Saturday morning
Picture f: Sunday morning

非常点拨

巧学助记

规则动词过去式构成方法口诀

过去式构成有规律,一般词尾加-ed。

如果词尾有个e,只要直接加上d,

“辅音字母+y”在词尾,变y为i加ed,

“一辅重闭”作尾巴,双写之后-ed加,

真题回放

(2008·四川乐山)

I still remember the day when I _____ to a concert on my fifth birthday.

- A. was going B. went C. go

【解析】B。题意:我仍然记得我五岁生日时去参加音乐会的那天。“我五岁生日时”是指过去的时间,因此句子要用一般过去时态。go的过去式是went。

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Role play. Student B is Lucy. Student A asks Lucy about her weekend.

角色表演。学生 B 演露西。学生 A 问露西周末怎么过的。

A: What did you do last weekend, Lucy?

上周末你干什么了,露西?

B: Well, on Saturday morning, I played tennis.^②

哦,星期六早晨,我打网球了。

2a Listen and underline the words you hear.

听录音并在你听见的单词下面划线。

1. E I visited my (aunt/grandmother).

我去看望了我的(婶婶/祖母)。

2. I did some (homework/sports).

我做了(作业/运动)。

3. I studied for the (science/math) test.

我为(理科/数学)测验备考。

4. I went to the (pool/beach).

我去了(游泳池/海滩)。

5. I played (volleyball/tennis).

我打(排球/网球)了。

2b Listen again and write "C" for Carol, "B" for Ben or "E" for Emma next to

再听一遍,并且在上面的说明旁写“C”代表卡罗尔,“B”代表本,或“E”代表

the statements above.

埃玛。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Use the information in the box.

利用方框里的信息,练习下面的对话。

A: What did you do last weekend?

你上个周末干什么了?

B: I _____.

我_____。

A: **What about** ^③ your friend, Carol?

你的朋友卡罗尔干了什么?

B: She _____ . What did you do?

她_____。你干了什么呢?

A: I _____ and _____ .

我_____和_____。

visit (a person)

拜访/看望(某人)

go to (a place) 去(某地)

stay at home 呆在家里

have ^④ a party

举行一个聚会

do some reading ^⑤ 阅读

practice ^⑥ English 练习英语

study for the (math) test

为(数学)测验备考

- visit [ˈvɪzɪt] v. 拜访; 访问
- test [test] n. 考试; 测验
- What about...?怎么样?
- stay [steɪ] v. 停留; 留下
- at home 在家
- have [hæv] v. 做; 进行; 从事
- do some reading 阅读
- practice [ˈpræktɪs] v. 练习; 实践

② play tennis 打网球

We'll go to play tennis this weekend. Will you join us? 这个周末我们会去打网球。你来吗?

Roger Federer plays tennis very well and he had won many titles. 罗杰·费德勒打网球打得非常好,而且他赢得了很多头衔。

play 后跟球类名词时,球类名词前不加冠词。

联想 play football 踢足球

play baseball 打棒球

③ What about...? 意思是“……怎么样?” 等同于 How about...? 可以接名词或动名词。

What about some more tea? 再来点儿茶怎么样?

What about going to the cinema? 去看电影怎么样?

提示 What about...? 可以用来询问消息,提供建议或征询意见。请点击下框“归纳拓展”学习这几种用法。

④ have v. 做; 进行; 从事

I have a walk after supper every day. 我每天吃完晚饭就去散步。

Let's have a talk. 咱们谈一谈吧。

搭配 have a good time 玩得高兴

have lessons 上课

have sports 进行体育活动

⑤ do some reading 阅读

In class we did some reading and writing. 上课时我们读课文和写作。

疑问句和否定句中 some 改为 any。

I didn't do any reading today. 我今天没有读书。

Did you do any reading today? 你今天读书了没有?

思考 此种结构的搭配常见的还有哪些?

请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

⑥ practice v. 练习; 实践 [= practise]

The boys are practicing playing football. 男孩们在练习踢足球。

practice 后接名词或动名词,不接不定式。在英式英语中,动词用 practise, 名词用 practice; 在美式英语中,名词、动词都用 practice。

参考答案

- 2a grandmother, homework, math, beach, tennis
- 2b 1. E 2. E 3. B 4. C 5. C

非常点拨

归纳拓展

what about... 的各种用法

- 询问消息 What about the weather in your home town? 你家乡的气候如何?
- 提供建议 What about going out for a walk? 出去散散步好吗?
- 征询意见 What about the TV play? 那个电视剧怎么样?

归纳拓展

do some + v-ing

- do some writing 写作
- do some cleaning 打扫
- do some running 跑步
- do some shopping 购物
- do some speaking 讲话
- do some washing 洗刷

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What did you do last weekend? 你上周末干了什么?	I played soccer. We went to the beach. 我踢足球了。我们去海滨了。
What did she do last weekend? 她上周末干了什么?	She did her homework. 她做作业了。
What did he do last weekend? 他上周末干了什么?	He went to the movies. 他看电影了。
What did they do last weekend? 他们上周末干了什么?	They played tennis. 他们打网球了。

Look! 注意!

Regular ⑦ verbs 规则动词		Irregular verbs 不规则动词	
Present ⑥ 现在式	Past ⑥ 过去式	Present 现在式	Past 过去式
play	played	do	did
clean	cleaned	go	went

3a Complete the conversations. Write numbers [1-3] in the blanks.
完成对话。用数字[1-3]填空。

- cleaned my room and studied for the math test
打扫了房间,准备数学测验
- did my homework and watched TV 做了作业,看了电视
- went to the beach 去了海滩

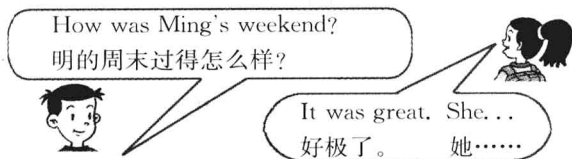
A: How was your weekend, Ming? B: It was great! I 3.
明,周末过得怎么样? 好极了。我_____。

A: How was your weekend, Tony? B: It was OK. I _____.
托尼,周末过得怎么样? 还可以。我_____。

A: How was your weekend, Sarah? B: It wasn't very good. I _____.
莎拉,周末过得怎么样? 不太好。我_____。

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions about Ming's, Tony's and Sarah's weekends.
就明、托尼和莎拉的周末提问并回答。



- regular ['regjələ(r)] *adj.* 正常的;规则的;有规律的
- verb [vɜ:(r)b] *n.* 动词
- irregular [ɪ'regjələ(r)] *adj.* 不规则的;无规律的
- present ['prezənt] *adj.* 现在时态的;现在的;目前的
- past [pæst], [pɑ:st] *adj.* 过去时态的;以前的;过去的

⑦ regular *adj.* 正常的;规则的;有规律的

- Everything is regular. 一切都很正常。
- We should have regular habits. 我们应该形成有规律的习惯。

拓展 regularly *adv.* 有规律地;经常地;定期地

irregular *adj.* 不正常的,无规律的

The post arrives regularly at eight every morning. 邮件每天上午八点钟按时送到。

It is an irregular verb. 它是不规则动词。

⑧ present *adj.* 现在时态的;现在的;目前的

What is your present job? 你现在的工作是什么?

The present price is 5 yuan. 现价5元。

拓展 present *n.* 现在;礼物

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”,加深理解 present 的一词多义。

⑨ past *adj.* 过去时态的;以前的;过去的

In the past year we learned English and French. 在过去的一年里我们学习了英语和法语。

Winter is past. 冬天过去了。

拓展 past *n.* 过去

搭配 in the past 在过去

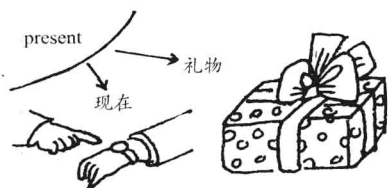
过去常与过去时态连用。你还知道哪些常与过去时态连用的时间状语? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

参考答案

- 3a 3 2 1
- 3b (1) cleaned my room
- (2) did my homework
- (3) visited my aunt
- (4) went to the library
- (5) played soccer
- (6) watched TV

图解

助记 present 的一词多义



归纳拓展

过去时态时间状语

- last week (night, Monday, month, year, ... etc.)
上周(昨晚、上周一、上个月、去年……等等)
- four years (days, month, ... etc.) ago
4年(天、月……等等)前
- the day before yesterday 前天
- just now 刚才
- yesterday 昨天

非常点拨

4 GAME 游戏 What did you do? 你干了什么?

Think of two things you did last weekend. Draw pictures of them. Your classmates guess what you did.

想出你在上周末干的两件事。 并画出来。 让你同学猜你干了些什么。



You went to the mountains! 你去了山里!

Section B

B部分

1a Here are some things that Sally and Jim did yesterday. Match the phrases with the pictures.

下面是莎莉和吉姆昨天干的一些事情。

将短语与图片联系起来。

1. b played the guitar 弹了吉他
2. studied geography 学习了地理

3. did my homework 做了作业
4. went to the library 去了图书馆



1b Are these activities fun or not fun? Draw a happy face or an unhappy face under each picture.

这些活动有趣还是没趣?

在每张图片下面画上高兴的面孔或不高兴的面孔。

2a Listen. What did Sally and Jim do last weekend? Complete the chart.

听录音。莎莉和吉姆上周末干了些什么? 完成表格。

Sally 莎莉	Jim 吉姆
cleaned her room 打扫了房间	

- mountain ['maʊntən] n. 山; 山脉
- geography [dʒɪ'ɑ:grəfi], [dʒɪ'ɒgrəfi] n. 地理学

10 mountain n. [C]山; [pl.]山脉

Qomolangma is the highest mountain in the world. 珠穆朗玛峰是世界上最高的山峰。

How did you enjoy yourself in the mountains? 你在山里过得愉快吗?

(a) mountain 与山名连用不加冠词。

Tai Mountain 泰山

(b) 山名在后面时须写成 Mount 或 Mt.

Mount Tai 泰山/Mt. Fuji 富士山

(c) 指山脉时用复数前加 the。

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”，学习 mountain 及其相关词。

Section B

1 play the guitar 弹吉他

The singer plays the guitar very well. 这位歌手弹吉他弹得很好。

When I was young, my brother taught me to play the guitar. 小时候,我哥哥教我弹吉他。

play 后跟乐器时,乐器名前要加定冠词 the。

play the piano 弹钢琴

play the violin 拉小提琴

play the flute 吹笛子

2 geography n. [U]地理(学)

In our geography class, we learned about rivers. 我们在地理课上学习了有关河流的知识。

She knows the geography of China. 她了解中国地理。

geographer n. 地理学研究者/专家

提示 请点击下框“归类卡片”，归纳学习各种学科。

参考答案

1a 1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c

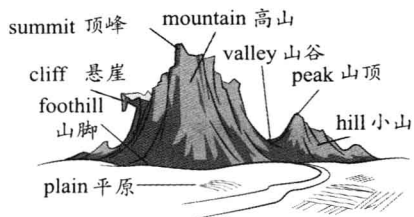
2a Sally cleaned her room
did her homework
went to the library
Jim played soccer
went to a movie
visited his friend

非常点拨



图解

助记 mountain 及其相关词



● 归类卡片

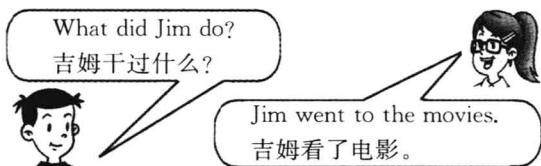
● 学科小结

- 政治 politics
- 历史 history
- 语文 Chinese
- 地理 geography
- 数学 mathematics
- 物理 physics
- 化学 chemistry
- 生物 biology
- 英语 English

2b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Make a conversation. Talk about what Sally and Jim did last weekend.

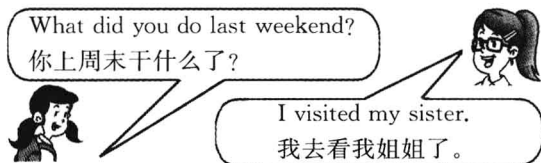
进行对话。 谈论莎莉和吉姆上周末干过什么？



2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Make a conversation. Ask what your partner did last weekend.

进行对话。 问你的同伴上周末干了什么。



3a Read the article. Underline all the past tense verbs.

阅读文章。 在所有的动词过去式下划线。

How Did Kids Spend^① the Weekend?

孩子们怎么度周末？

Yesterday^②, we asked ten students at No. 3 Middle School what they did last weekend. For most^③ kids, the weekend was fun. On Saturday morning, ten kids did their homework or studied. On Saturday afternoon, five kids went shopping^④, and three went to the library. Two kids also played computer games. On Saturday evening, seven kids watched a movie or stayed at home and watched TV. On Sunday, two kids visited friends, nine kids cleaned their rooms, and five played sports.

3b Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks.

看图片填空。

- spend [spend] v. 度过; 花费
- yesterday ['jestə(r)der] n. 昨天
- No. ['nʌmbə(r)] abbr. (=number) 编号; 号
- middle ['mɪdl] adj. 中间的; 中等的
- middle school 中学
- most [məʊst] adj. 大多数的; 大部分的; 几乎全部的
- go shopping 购物

③ spend v. 度过; 花费

- I spent the winter in Canada. 我是在加拿大过的冬天。
- I spent ten yuan on the book. 我花十元钱买了这本书。
- He spent three hours in shopping. 他花了三小时购物。

④ yesterday n. [U] 昨天 adv. 在昨天

- Yesterday was Sunday. 昨天是星期日。
- They went to play basketball yesterday. 他们昨天去打篮球了。

yesterday 作时间状语时不再加介词 on 或 in.

请点击下框“图解助记”学习日历上的时间。

⑤ most adj. 大多数的; 大部分的; 几乎全部的

Most of them are students. 他们大多数是学生。

I like most vegetables. 大多数的蔬菜我都喜欢。

most adj. (加 the) 最多的, 最高程度的 adv. 最

She has the most books in the class. 她是班上拥有书最多的人。

I like the last song most. 我最喜欢最后一首歌。

⑥ go shopping “去购物”。 go + doing “去……”, 多用于体育活动和业余娱乐活动。

They went shopping last Sunday. 他们上星期天去购物了。

We're going climbing next Sunday. 下星期天我们要去爬山。

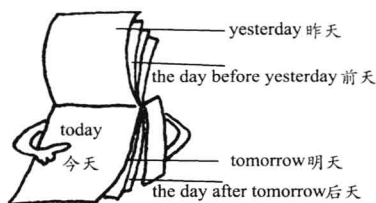
对于此类短语你了解多少? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

参考答案

- 2b 1. A: What did Jim do?
B: Jim played the guitar.
- 2. A: What did Sally do?
B: Sally went to the library.
- 3. A: What did Jim do?
B: Jim visited his uncle.
- 4. A: What did Sally do?
B: Sally went to the beach.
- 2c 1. A: What did you do last weekend?
B: I went shopping with my mother.
- 2. A: What did you do last week-end?
B: I studied geography at home.

图解

助记“日子”



归纳拓展

go + doing

- 表示进行某项活动: go hunting (shooting, bathing, shopping, skating, swimming, mountain climbing...) 去打猎(射击、洗澡、买东西、滑冰、游泳、爬山……)
- 表示从事某种职业: go farming (teaching, driving...) 务农(执教、开车……)

非常点拨

I had a busy weekend. On Saturday morning, I cleaned my room.

我过了一个忙碌的周末。星期六早晨,我打扫了房间。

In the afternoon, I . It was a little difficult. On Saturday night,

下午,我 . 这有点难。 星期六的晚上,

I . My aunt cooked dinner for me. On Sunday morning, I .

我 . 我婶婶为我做了晚餐。 星期天早上,我 .

I read a book about history. Then in the afternoon, I with my

我读了一本历史书。 然后在下午,我和我的朋友 .

friends. On Sunday night, I . I saw an interesting talk show.

星期天晚上,我 . 我看了一个有趣的谈话节目。

3c Write about what you did last weekend.

写一写你上周末做了什么。

4

GAME 游戏

Who am I? 我是谁?

Imagine you are a famous person. Write what you did last weekend. Then

想象你是一位名人。 写出你上周末干了什么。 然后

talk to your partner about your weekend activities. Your partner tries to

向你的朋友谈论你周末的活动。 你的同伴设法猜出你

guess who you are.

是谁。

What did you do last weekend?

上周末你干了什么?



I wrote a new song.

我写了一首新歌。



Activities 活动

I wrote a new song. 我写了一首新歌。

I practiced my guitar. 我练习弹吉他了。

Self Check

自我检测

1

Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。 在你认识的单词前打✓。

• had [hæd] v. have 的过去式

• saw [sɔ:] v. see 的过去式

• talk [tɔ:k] n. 访谈节目;谈话;交谈;演讲

• talk show 访谈节目

• wrote [rəʊt] v. write 的过去式

• song [sɔ:ŋ], [sɒŋ] n. 歌;歌曲

7 had v. have 的过去式

Yesterday I had lunch with my uncle. 昨天我和我的叔叔一起吃的午饭。

They had a good time on my birthday party. 在我的生日聚会上他们玩得很开心。

We had a meeting just now. 刚才我们开了个会。

8 saw v. see 的过去式

I saw a boy play football under the tree just now. 刚才我看到一个小男孩在树下踢足球。

He saw his brother go to the cinema yesterday. 昨天他看见他哥哥去看电影了。

9 talk show 访谈节目

(1) talk 在这里是名词,用做定语,修饰 show,意思是“谈话;交谈”,常和 with 或 about 连用。

I had a talk with Mr. Jones. 我和琼斯先生谈过话。

We had a talk about this meeting. 就这次会议我们进行了一次谈话。

拓展 talk v. 谈论

They often talk about you. 他们常常谈起你。

(2) show 在这里是名词,意思是“表演;演出节目”。

I like this talk show. 我喜欢这个访谈节目。

Let's go to see the dolphin show first. 让我们先去看海豚表演吧。

拓展 show v. 出示;陈列

Can you show me your photographs? 把你的照片给我看看好吗?

10 wrote v. write 的过去式

Tom wrote a letter to his pen pal in America. 汤姆给他美国的笔友写了一封信。

Miss Li wrote our names on the blackboard. 李老师把我们的名字写在了黑板上。

11 song n. [C] 歌;歌曲

This song is very popular. 这首歌很流行。

He sang a song at the party. 他在聚会上唱了一首歌。

No song, no supper. (谚) 不劳动者不得食。

拓展 sing a song 唱歌

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·北京)

We were in Qingdao last week and great fun there.

A. will have B. have had C. had D. have

【解析】C。题意:我们上周在青岛,在那里过得很开心。时间状语为 last week,并且前一句用一般过去时,故 and 连接的并列关系的句子也用一般过去时。

真题回放

(2008·浙江嘉兴)

—Jack, where's my small round mirror?

—Sorry, Betty. I it.

A. break B. broke C. will break D. am breaking

【解析】B。题意:“杰克,我的小圆镜子在哪里?”“抱歉,贝蒂。我打破了。”打破镜子是过去发生的动作,用一般过去时。

- | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> weekend | <input type="checkbox"/> watched | <input type="checkbox"/> visited | <input type="checkbox"/> cleaned |
| 周末 | 看 | 拜访 | 打扫 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> studied | <input type="checkbox"/> played | <input type="checkbox"/> was | <input type="checkbox"/> did |
| 学习 | 玩 | 是 | 做 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> went | <input type="checkbox"/> geography | <input type="checkbox"/> homework | <input type="checkbox"/> guitar |
| 去 | 地理 | 家庭作业 | 吉他 |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Read the story about Old Henry. Imagine you work for the Heartwarming

阅读关于老亨利的故事。 设想你在为爱心工程工作。

Project. Write a report about how you helped Old Henry last weekend.

写一篇有关你上周如何帮助老亨利的报道。

Do you think everyone enjoys their weekends? Old Henry does not.

你认为每个人的周末都过得好吗? 老亨利过得就不好。

Last month, he went for a walk with Wang Wang, his cute dog. It was a nice day and Old Henry was happy. He sat down and watched Wang Wang

上个月,他与汪汪——他可爱的狗一同散步。 天气晴朗,老亨利很开心。 他坐下,看着汪汪与一只友善的黑猫

play with a friendly black cat.

玩耍。

Then it was time to go home. Old Henry looked for his dog. But Wang Wang wasn't there...

后来该回家了。 老亨利找他的狗。 但是,汪汪却不在那儿了……

汪汪却不在那儿了……

Now Old Henry is very sad. He has no dog and no family. He doesn't want to do anything.

现在老亨利很伤心。 他没有了狗就没有了家人。 他什么也不想做了。

Suggestions 建议

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|
| clean the house | play chess | watch a movie |
| 打扫房间 | 下象棋 | 看电影 |
| play the guitar | cook dinner | |
| 弹吉他 | 做晚饭 | |

Last weekend, I went to visit Old Henry.

上个周末,我去看望了老亨利。

- go for a walk 去散步
- sit [sit] v. 坐;使坐下
- sat [sæt] v. sit 的过去式
- down [daʊn] adv. 向下;在下面;下去;降低
- cat [kæt] n. 猫
- It is time to... 该是……的时候了。
- wasn't ['wɔ:zənt], ['wɒznt] = was not
- no [nəʊ] adj. 没有
- anything ['eniθɪŋ] pron. 任何事;无论何事
- suggestion [səg'dʒestʃən], [sə'dʒestʃən] n. 建议;意见

Self Check

1 It is time to... 该是……的时候了。

It's time to have a class. 该上课了/上课的时间到了。

It's time to go home. 该是回家的时候了。

常用的 It's time... 句型还有: It's time for sth. “该是……的时候了”和 It's time that... “是……的时候了”

2 no adj. 没有

There are no flowers in the garden. 花园里没有花。

No one can do it. 没有人能做此事。

I have no brothers and sisters. 我一个兄弟姐妹也没有。

no 后不接冠词和指示代词。

3 anything pron. 任何事(物); 无论何事(物)

There isn't anything in the box. 盒子里没有东西。

If you remember anything, please let us know. 你要是想起什么来,就告诉我们。

(a) anything 用于疑问句、否定句和 if 从句,指“任何事(物)”;用于肯定句,指“无论何事(物)”。

(b) anything 是不定代词,定语要后置。类似的词还有: everything, nothing, something, everything 等。

Did she tell you anything interesting? 她跟你说过什么有趣的事吗?

He has something important for you. 他有重要的东西给你。

参考答案

3 Last weekend, I went to visit Old Henry. When I got there, he was just sitting on the bench in his garden. I came up and sat down beside him. He said nothing. Then I told him something interesting I did in my school with my classmates. At the beginning of the talk, Old Henry seemed not to be interested in my story. Then I told him that we had a football match against another school's football team last Saturday. It was wonderful. I found he faced to me and listened carefully. When I told him I finally scored a goal for our team and won the match, and all my classmates cheered to me, I found there was a big smile on Old Henry's face. He said "Great!" Then he talked about sports happily.

I had a great weekend with Old Henry. I said to myself "Great!"





语法在线

一般过去时

1. 一般过去时是表示过去发生的动作和过去存在的状态。

(1) 表示动作:用实义动词,如 play, work, sing, jump, know, go, come.

▶ He worked in the factory ten years ago. 十年前他在那家工厂工作。

▶ Your brother just went out. 你兄弟刚刚出去。

(2) 表示状态:用 be, have, there be 等。

▶ I was a student. 我是个学生。(表示我过去的身份)

▶ He had two dogs. 他有两条狗。(表示他过去拥有)

2. 一般过去时的主要句式:

(1) 陈述句:

▶ The boy played soccer yesterday. 昨天这男孩踢足球了。

▶ The city was once a small village. 那个城市以前是个小村庄。

(2) 一般疑问句:

▶ —Did the boy pass the exam? 这男孩考试通过了吗?

—Yes, he did. /No, he didn't. 是的。/不,没通过。

▶ —Were you in Class Two? 你以前在二班吗?

—Yes, I was. /No, I wasn't. 是的。/不,不在。

(3) 否定句:

▶ They didn't take part in the game yesterday. 昨天他们没参加游戏。

▶ They were not happy. 他们并不快乐。

(4) 特殊疑问句:

▶ What did the boy do yesterday? 昨天这男孩做什么了?

▶ Where were you yesterday afternoon? 你昨天下午在哪?

3. 常与一般过去时连用的时间状语有: just now, yesterday, last night, last year, the other day, at that time, at that moment, a few days ago.

4. 动词的过去式:分为不规则动词和规则动词。

(1) 部分不规则动词过去式: see→saw; give→gave; have/has→had; am/is→was; say→said; are→were; get→got; do→did; sit→sat.

(2) 规则动词过去式构成:

a. 一般直接在动词后加“-ed”: play→played; look→looked.

b. 结尾是 e 的动词加“-d”: live→lived; hope→hoped.

c. 末尾只有一个辅音字母的重读闭音节,先双写这个辅音字母,再加“ed”: stop→stopped; plan→planned; drop→dropped.

d. 结尾是辅音字母加 y 结尾的单词先变“y”为“i”,再加“-ed”: carry→carried; study→studied; worry→worried.

5. 动词的过去式的发音规律为:

(1) 在清辅音后发 [t]: helped [helpt], finished [ˈfɪnɪʃt].

(2) 在元音或浊辅音后读 [d]: stayed [steɪd], agreed [əˈɡri:d].

(3) 辅音 [t],[d] 后读 [ɪd]: wanted [ˈwɒntɪd], needed [ˈni:ɪd].

助记 动词后缀 ed 的读音口诀:清音[t] 浊元[d];[t][d]后面读[ɪd].



点击名题

1. We were in Qingdao last week and great fun there.

- A. will have B. have had
-
- C. had D. have

【解析】题意:我们上周在青岛,在那里过得很开心。时间状语为 last week, 并且前一句用一般过去时,故 and 连接的并列关系的句子也用一般过去时。

【答案】C

2. I told my mother I wasn't worried about my exam. But in fact I .

- A. did B. was C. have

【解析】题意:我告诉妈妈我不担心考试。其实我很担心。前面一句用一般过去时,后一句时态一致,又前后句之间有相同部分 worried about my exam, 故省去。

【答案】B

3. It's four years since Mike to Tibet.

- A. has been B. is coming
-
- C. will come D. came

【解析】题意:自从迈克来到西藏已经有四年了。根据题意 Mike 来到西藏是过去的动作,所以要用一般过去时。

【答案】D

4. —Did you go shopping on May 1?

—No, too many people in the shop.

- A. There is B. There are
-
- C. There were D. There was

【解析】题意:“五月一号你去购物了吗?”“没有。商场里人太多了。”表示“某地有某物”用 there be 结构,be 动词与其后的名词 many people 一致,用复数;根据问句的时态判断用一般过去时。

【答案】C

5. Nick a new camera. He has taken lots of pictures with it.

- A. buys B. is buying
-
- C. bought D. will buy

【解析】题意:尼克买了一个新相机。他用新相机照了很多照片。买相机是发生在过去的动作,所以用一般过去时态。

【答案】C

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·河北)

Nick a new camera. He has taken lots of pictures with it.

- A. buys B. is buying C. bought D. will buy

【解析】C。题意:尼克买了一部新相机。他用新相机照了许多照片。因为买相机是发生在过去的动作,所以用一般过去时态。

真题回放

(2008·苏州)

—Did you wash your clothes?

—I was going to wash my clothes but I visitors.

- A. have had B. have C. had D. will have

【解析】C。题意:“你洗衣服了吗?”“我正想洗,可是有客人来访。”“客人来访”是过去的事情,故用一般过去时。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 <<<

I. 单项选择 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- I'm studying for the English _____.
A. party B. week C. test D. word
- Don't stay _____ home. Let's _____ football.
A. in; look B. at; sing
C. in; run D. at; play
- What do you think of your new job?
—_____.
A. I'm a teacher
B. I work at a school
C. It is OK
D. I go to work at 7:00 am
- It is time _____.
A. to go shopping B. go shopping
C. to go to shopping D. to shopping
- My _____ is that we go to the cinema.
A. beginning B. activity
C. problem D. suggestion
- _____ Sunday morning I did homework _____ my friends.
A. At; with B. In; for
C. On; with D. For; from
- He _____ his homework yesterday.
A. doesn't do B. didn't
C. didn't do D. do
- I usually _____ my weekend in Shanghai.
A. stop B. spend C. give D. play
- He wants to improve his English, so he _____ it every day.
A. tells B. enjoys C. practices D. describes
- _____ you _____ football yesterday?
A. Do; play B. Did; play
C. Did; played D. Did; playing
- Who cleaned the classroom?
—Jack _____.
A. can B. does C. did D. is
- Tina _____ her friends last week.
A. visits B. is visiting
C. visited D. visit
- Mrs White has no dog _____ no cat.
A. and B. but C. so D. or
- _____?
—He went to the library.
A. Where did he live B. How was he
C. Where did he go D. Did he go to the library
- Is there _____ interesting on TV?

—I'm afraid not.

- A. something B. anything
C. nothing D. everything

II. 完形填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Lin Tao 1 on duty last Monday. It was 2. Everyone 3 here, but Jim was 4. He was 5 bed. On Tuesday he was 6. Mr. Hu was sorry 7 that Jim didn't bring his homework. Mr. Hu said, "You 8 finish it today and 9 forget 10 it tomorrow."

These days he is much better than before.

- A. am B. is C. was D. were
- A. November 12th B. November twelfth
C. the November 12th D. November the 12
- A. was B. were C. are D. is
- A. here B. from C. away D. no
- A. ill in B. in ill C. in D. had in
- A. very better B. very good
C. much better D. much well
- A. to hear B. hearing
C. hears D. to listen to
- A. would better B. would good
C. have better D. had better
- A. don't B. not to C. no D. aren't
- A. take B. bring C. to take D. to bring

III. 阅读理解 (共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

A

Have a Party

Mary is going to have a party for her brother. She wants Ann to help her at the party. Here is Mary's letter to Ann:

Dear Ann,

I am going to have a party for my brother at home this Sunday from 7:00 to 9:00 in the evening. Would you like to come and help me at the party? I hope you can come.

With best wishes,

Mary

This is Ann's answer:

Dear Mary,

Thank you very much for asking me to your party this Sunday. I shall be very happy to come.

With best wishes,

Ann

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

- The party is for _____.
A. Ann B. Mary

- C. Mary's brother D. Ann's brother
2. They're going to have the party _____ .
A. at home B. at a library
C. on Monday D. on Saturday
3. The party will last(持续) _____ .
A. two hours B. two days
C. seven days D. nine days
4. Mary asks Ann to come and _____ at the party.
A. tell a story B. have a talk
C. sing a song D. do something for her
5. Which of the following is RIGHT?
A. Ann won't go to the party.
B. Ann will go to the party.
C. Ann doesn't like to the party.
D. Ann feels sorry for the party.

B

Over the weekends, the Greens spent their time together. On Saturday morning they cleaned their house together. On Saturday afternoon they worked in the garden together. And on Saturday evening they sat in the living room and watched TV together. On Sunday morning they went shopping in the big supermarket on Central Street. On Sunday afternoon they had a big dinner together. And in the evening they had a family party. They played the piano, sang and danced. The family had a good weekend together.

根据短文内容判断正(T)误(F)。

6. Mr Green worked in the garden on Saturday evening.
7. The Greens went to the beach over the weekend.
8. On Sunday evening they had a family party.
9. The Greens had a good time over the weekend.
10. The big supermarket is on Central Street.

A. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

It was Sunday. Li Lei and his parents were very busy. At nine in the morning, Li Lei's father was in the garden. He watered some flowers. Li Lei's mother did some housework. Li Lei was in the room with his friends. They did their projects. At two in the afternoon, Li Lei and his friends played basketball on the school playground. His father was at work in the factory. His mother went to the market. At half past six, the family were at home. They were tired, but very happy.

根据短文内容填空。

1. —Was Li Lei at home last Sunday morning?
—Yes, _____ .
2. —Who _____ the flowers that morning?
—Li Lei's father did.
3. —_____ Li Lei and his friends at home last Sunday afternoon?
—_____ .
4. —What _____ Li Lei and his friends do?

—They _____ .

5. —_____ Li Lei's mother do last Sunday afternoon?
—She _____ the market.
- V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)
根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。
1. He often goes to the library and do some _____ (阅读).
2. The students are having a math _____ (测试).
3. Tom usually _____ (练习) the piano on Sunday.
4. Jeff _____ (参观) the History Museum last week.
5. Do you like the _____ (歌曲) *Country Road*?
6. My father often watches talk s _____ on TV on Friday evenings.
7. I'm a student at No. 1 M _____ School.
8. How did you s _____ your holiday?
9. There are seven days in a w _____ .
10. I usually s _____ at home and watch TV after work.

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. They had a party on Saturday afternoon. (对划线部分提问)
_____ they _____ on Saturday afternoon?
2. What about this film? (改为同义句)
_____ this film?
3. I went to the library yesterday. (对划线部分提问)
_____ you _____ yesterday?
4. I did my homework last night. (改为否定句)
I _____ my homework last night.
5. The book was boring. (对划线部分提问)
_____ the book?

VII. 翻译填空(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

1. 他们经常在早晨散步。
They often _____ in the morning.
2. 我常在早晨练习说英语。
I often _____ in the morning.
3. 是该吃早饭的时候了。
It's _____ .
4. 我们周末很忙。
We _____ a _____ weekend.
5. 昨晚我呆在家里看电视了。
I _____ home and _____ last night.

VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

又一周过去了,上个周末你是怎样度过的?一定过得很愉快吧。用一般过去时写一篇60词左右的短文,描述一下你上周末的活动。

参考词汇: clean my room, do my homework, visit my friend, get up, read a book, go to a movie

Unit 10

Where did you go on vacation? 你假期去哪儿了?

A
部
分

Language Goal: Talk about past events

语言目标: 谈论过去的事情



英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Match the activities with the pictures [a-g].

将活动与图片[a-g]联系起来。

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. stayed at home <u> e </u>
呆在家里 | 2. went to New York City _____
去了纽约城 |
| 3. visited my uncle _____
看望了我的叔叔 | 4. went to summer camp _____
去了夏令营 |
| 5. went to the mountains _____
去了山区 | 6. went to the beach _____
去了海滩 |
| 7. visited museums ② _____
参观了博物馆 | |

Where did you go on vacation?
你到哪儿度假了?



I went to the mountains.
我去了山区。



1b Listen and number the people [1-5] in the picture.

听录音。给图片里的人物编号[1-5]。

- New York City 纽约市
- camp [kæmp] *n.* 野营; 营地
- summer camp 夏令营
- **museum** [mju:'ziəm], [mju: 'ziəm] *n.* 博物馆

本页生词



考点注释

Section A

① on vacation 在度假

Li Ming will be back in three days for he is on vacation. 李明在度假,要三天后回来。

She's on vacation. She needed a change from work. 她正在度假,她需要放下工作改变一下生活。



holiday 也有“假期”的意思,你知道它和 vacation 有什么区别吗? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

② museum *n.* [C] 博物馆

Can you tell me the way to the museum, please? 请问,你能告诉我去博物馆的路吗?

There are many museums in London. 伦敦有许多博物馆。

the Palace Museum in Beijing 北京故宫博物院



你知道世界四大著名的博物馆吗? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

参考答案

- 1a 1. e 2. b 3. d 4. c
5. a 6. f 7. g

非常点拨



归纳拓展

四大著名博物馆

妙辨异同 _____ vacation, holiday

vacation 指工作日以外的休息时期,多用于美国英语,泛指一般假期,一般时间较长。

holiday 指工作日以外的休息时期,多用于英国英语。

- Louvre Museum 法国巴黎卢浮宫博物馆
- British Museum 英国伦敦大英博物馆
- Metropolitan Museum of Art 美国纽约大都会博物馆
- Winter Palace 俄罗斯国立埃米塔什博物馆

1. Tina 蒂娜 2. Brad 布拉德 3. Sally 莎莉 4. Xiang Hua 向华 5. Tom 汤姆

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Where did the people in 1a go on vacation? Make conversations.

1a 中的人去哪儿度假了? 编写对话。

A: Where did Tina go on vacation?

蒂娜去哪儿度假了?

B: She went to the mountains.

她去了山区。

2a Listen. Where did Nancy, Kevin and Julie go on vacation? Match the person with the place.

听录音。南希、凯文和朱莉去哪儿度假了? 将人物与地点联系起来。

People 人物	Places 地点
1. <u> c </u> Nancy 南希	a. the beach 海滩
2. <u> </u> Kevin 凯文	b. home 家里
3. <u> </u> Julie 朱莉	c. New York City 纽约城

2b Listen again. For each question check (✓) "Yes, I did." or "No, I didn't."

再听一遍。一边听他们谈话,一边给每个问题在"Yes, I did."或"No, I didn't."两栏中打✓。

	Did you...	Yes, I did.	No, I didn't.
Nancy 南希	go to Central Park? 去中央公园了吗?	✓	
Kevin 凯文	play volleyball? 打排球了吗?		
	swim? 游泳了吗?		
Julie 朱莉	go to the movies? 去看电影了吗?		
	study for exams ? 备考了吗?		

- didn't = did not
- central ['sentrəl] *adj.* 中心的; 位于中心的
- exam [ig'zæm] *n.* 考试; 检查

③ central *adj.* 中心的; 位于中心的

▶ The shops are in a central position in the city. 商店都在城市的中心位置。

▶ They live across the Central Plaza. 他们住在中央广场的对面。

拓展 center *n.* 中心; 中央

▶ Alice stood in the center of a large group. 艾丽丝站在一大群人的中央。

④ exam (examination) *n.* [C] 考试; 检查

▶ He passed the English exam. 他英语考试及格了。

▶ She studied until 12 o'clock for exam. 她为考试一直学到12点。

▶ I had an eye exam yesterday. 我昨天做了一次眼部检查。

搭配 take/do an exam 参加考试

pass/do well in an exam 通过考试

fail/do badly in an exam 考试不及格

思考 examination 是以-ion 结尾的名词, 此类名词你还知道哪些呢? 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。exam 与 test 有什么区别? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

参考答案

- 2a 1. c 2. a 3. b
- 2b go to Central Park?
Yes, I did.
play volleyball?
No, I didn't.
swim?
Yes, I did.
go to the movies?
No, I didn't.
study for exams?
Yes, I did.



非常点拨

归纳拓展

-ion 结尾的名词

-ion 结尾的名词

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| • operation 手术 | • celebration 庆祝 |
| • congratulation 祝贺 | • action 行动 |
| • invention 发明 | • pollution 污染 |
| • decision 决定 | • examination 考试 |
| • invitation 邀请 | • pronunciation 发音 |

妙辨异同

exam, test

exam 通常指正式的“考试”、如期终考试、入学考试等。
test 指“测验、考查、小考”,也可指正规的考试或考查。

▶ She was sad when she failed her math exam. 数学考试不及格,她很难过。

▶ We'll have a test before the class begins. 课前我们有个测试。

2c GROUPWORK 小组活动

Role play conversations between Nancy, Kevin, and Julie. You can talk about the activities in the chart and other activities.

角色表演: 在南希、凯文和朱莉之间进行对话。你可以谈论表中的活动和其他活动。



Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Where did you go on vacation? 你去哪儿度假了?	I went to summer camp. 我去夏令营了。
Where did they go on vacation? 他们去哪儿度假了?	They went to New York City. 他们去纽约城了。
Where did he go on vacation? 他去哪儿度假了?	He stayed at home. 他呆在家里。
Where did she go on vacation? 她去哪儿度假了?	She visited her uncle. 她去看了她叔叔。
Did you / he / she / they go to Central Park?	Yes, I/he/she/they did. 是的,我/他/她/他们去了。
	No, I/he/she/they didn't. 没有,我/他/她/他们没有去。

3a Fill in the blanks in the conversation. Use "was" or "were".

用“was”或“were”填充对话。

Amy: How ⁽¹⁾ was your vacation, Lin? 埃米: 林, 你假期过得怎么样?

Lin: It ⁽²⁾ pretty good. 林: 相当不错。

Amy: How ⁽³⁾ the beaches? 埃米: 海滩怎么样?

Lin: They ⁽⁴⁾ fantastic. 林: 好极了。

Amy: How ⁽⁵⁾ the weather? 埃米: 天气怎么样?

Lin: It ⁽⁶⁾ hot and humid. 林: 又热又潮湿。

Amy: How ⁽⁷⁾ the people? 埃米: 那些人怎么样?

Lin: They ⁽⁸⁾ unfriendly^⑧. 林: 他们不友好。

- **really** ['ri:əli] *adv.* (表示疑问、惊讶、恼怒等)真的;是吗;真是的
- **were** [wə(r)], [wɜ:(r)] *v.* are 的过去式
- **rainy** ['reɪni] *adj.* 下雨的;多雨的
- **fantastic** [fæn'tæstɪk] *adj.* 极好的
- **unfriendly** [ʌn'frendli] *adj.* 不友善的;不友好的

⑤ “Where did you go on vacation? 你到哪儿度假了?”由特殊疑问词 where 与过去时的一般疑问句构成的特殊疑问句来询问“过去去过哪里”。“Did+主语+动词原形”是过去时的一般疑问句形式。

- ▶ —Where did you go on vacation? 你去哪儿度假了?
- I went to the summer camp. 我去了夏令营。
- ▶ —Where did they go last night? 他们昨晚去哪里了?
- They went to a party. 他们去参加聚会了。
- ▶ —Did you go to the movies last night? 你昨晚去看电影了吗?
- Yes, I did. /No, I didn't. 是的,去看了。/不,我没去。

⑥ **really adv.** (表示疑问、惊讶、恼怒等)真的;是吗;真是的

- ▶ —I collect rare coins. 我收集罕见的硬币。
- Really? 真的吗?
- ▶ —We're going to Japan next month. 我们下个月要去日本。
- Oh, really? 啊,真的吗?

联想 really *adv.* 真正;实在

- ▶ That new movie is really cool. 那部新电影真酷。
- ▶ It's really awful! 这实在糟糕!

⑦ **were** 是 **are** 的过去式,用于复数和第二人称单数;**was** 是 **am** 和 **is** 的过去式,用于第一人称和第三人称单数。

- ▶ The noise was so loud. 噪声太大了。
- ▶ They were the last people in the classroom. 他们是教室里最后剩下的人。

⑧ **unfriendly adj.** 不友善的;不友好的
这个词是由英语中的否定前缀-un加形容词 **friendly** 构成的。

- ▶ Tom is very unfriendly to me. 汤姆对我非常不友善。
- ▶ He looked unfriendly. 他看上去不大友好。

提示 英语中类似结构的词还有:

- un+happy=unhappy (不幸福的)
- un+healthy=unhealthy (不健康的)
- un+able=unable (不能的)
- un+true=untrue (不真实的)
- un+important=unimportant (不重要的)
- un+kind=unkind (不和善的)
- un+usual=unusual (不平常的)
- un+friendly=unfriendly (不友好的)

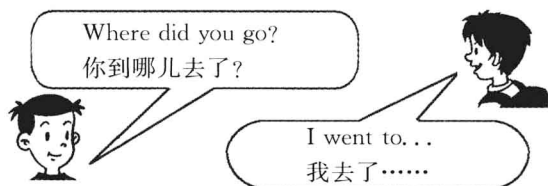


3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

What did these people think of their vacations? Make conversations like the one above. 像上面的对话一样编写对话。

4 VACATION ALBUM 假期影集

Make a photo album of vacations you enjoyed. Show the album to your classmates and talk about your vacations. 把你的假期影集给你的同学看,并谈论你的假期。



参考答案

- 3a (1) was (2) was (3) were
(4) were (5) was (6) was
(7) were (8) were
- 3b 1. A: How was the bus trip?
B: It was relaxing.
2. A: How was the food?
B: It was awful!
3. A: How was the museum?
B: It was boring.
4. A: How was the beach?
B: It was beautiful.

Section B

B部分

1a Match the words with the pictures below.

将单词与下面的图片联系起来。

- 1. f **delicious** 2. **expensive**
 可口的 昂贵的
- 3. **not crowded** 4. **cheap**
 不拥挤的 便宜的
- 5. **awful** 6. **crowded**
 可怕的 拥挤的

1b Write ☺ words on the left. Write ☹ words on the right.

将☺的单词写在左边。☹的单词写在右边。

☺ words	☹ words
delicious 可口的	awful 可怕的

2a Listen to Vera talking about her vacation. Answer these questions.

1. Where did Vera go on vacation? _____
 维拉在哪儿度假了?
2. Did Vera like her vacation? _____
 维拉假期过得愉快吗?

参考答案

- 1a 1. f 2. a 3. d 4. e 5. b 6. c
- 1b ☺ delicious, cheap, not crowded
 ☹ awful, expensive, crowded
- 2a 1. She went to Tokyo. 2. Yes, she did.
- 2b vacation: great
 museums: interesting, crowded
 stores: expensive
 people: friendly
 food: delicious

2b Listen again and fill in the chart.

再听一遍并填表。

What did Vera say about:

维拉说过什么:

her vacation	great	the people	_____
她的假期	好极了	人们	_____
the museums	_____	the food	_____
博物馆	_____	食品	_____
the stores	_____		
商店			

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Role play. Student A is Vera's friend. Student B is Vera. 角色表演。学生 A 是维拉的朋友。学生 B 是维拉。
Talk about Vera's vacation. Use the information in the chart above. 谈论维拉的假期。利用上面表格的信息。

Student A, begins your questions with these words:
学生 A, 用这些单词开始对你的提问:

Where did ...? What did ...? Did you ...?
How was ...? How were ...?

3a Read Bob's travel diary. Circle the good things about his vacation. Underline the bad things.

在坏事情的下面划线。

- **delicious** [di'liʃəs] *adj.* 美味的
- **expensive** [ɪk'spensɪv] *adj.* 昂贵的
- **crowded** ['kraʊdɪd] *adj.* 拥挤的
- **cheap** [tʃi:p] *adj.* 廉价的; 便宜的
- **awful** ['ɔ:fəl] *adj.* 极坏的; 极讨厌的



Monday, July 15th
星期一, 七月十五日

Great **weather**! It was sunny and hot all day. We went to a beautiful beach. We had great fun playing in the **water**. In the afternoon, we went shopping. The **shops** were too crowded, so I didn't really enjoy it.

真是好天气! 阳光灿烂, 整天都热。 我们去了一个美丽的海滩。 我们在水中玩得非常快乐。 下午时我们去购物。 商店太拥挤了, 因此我并非真的很愉快。

Tuesday, July 16th
星期二, 七月十六日

Today it rained, so we went to a museum. It was kind of boring. I found a small boy **crying** in the **corner**. He was lost and I helped him find his father. That **made** me **feel** very happy. I didn't have any money for a taxi, so I **walked back** to the hotel. I was really tired.

今天下雨, 因此我们去了博物馆。 那里没什么意思。 我发现一个小男孩在角落里哭泣。 他迷路了, 我帮他找到了他爸爸。 这使我感到非常愉快。 我没有钱打车了, 因此我步行回到宾馆。 我累极了。

Wednesday, July 17th
星期三, 七月十七日

Today the weather was cool, so we **decided** to play tennis. We played all morning. It was really fun. We had Sichuan food for dinner. It was delicious! I went to the tennis court every day.

今天天气凉爽, 因此我们决定打网球。 我们打了整整一天。 非常好玩。 我们中午吃的四川菜。 好吃极了!

3b Imagine you are an American student on vacation in Beijing. Write a travel diary.

想象你是一个在北京度假的美国学生。

写一篇旅行日记。

the Great Wall 长城

the Palace Museum 故宫

Tian'an Men Square 天安门广场

a Beijing Hutong 北京胡同

Thursday, August 1st

星期四, 八月一日

Today I went to the Palace Museum. It was cool. Then I...

今天, 我到故宫去了。

天气凉爽。 然后我……

4 GROUPWORK 小组活动

Imagine you are all foreigners on vacation in China. You meet each other at the airport on your way home. Talk about what you did on your vacation.

设想你们都是在中国度假的外国人。 你们回家途中在机场相遇。 谈论你们在假期中干的事情。

- water ['wɔ:tə(r)] n. 水
- corner ['kɔ:(r)nə(r)] n. 角落; 街角; 墙角
- made [meɪd] v. make 的过去式
- walk [wɔ:k] v. 走; 步行; 散步
- back [bæk] adv. 回原处; 往回去
- wall [wɔ:l] n. 墙壁; 围墙; 城墙
- palace ['pælis] n. 宫殿
- square [skweə], [skwer] n. 广场
- Hutong n. (汉)胡同
- cry [kraɪ] v. 流泪; 哭泣
- feel [fi:l] v. 感到; 觉得
- make [meɪk] v. 使; 促使; 迫使
- decide [dɪ'saɪd] v. 决定; 下决心
- the Great Wall 万里长城
- the Palace Museum 故宫
- Tian'an Men Square 天安门广场

考点注释

Section B

① a) find sb. doing sth. 固定句式, 意为“发现某人在干某事”, 类似用法的动词还有 see, hear.

▶ The teacher found some boys playing football on the playground. 老师发现一些男孩在操场上踢足球。

▶ We heard a girl singing in the next room. 我们听到一个女孩在隔壁屋里唱歌。

b) cry v. 流泪; 哭泣

▶ Don't cry. 不要哭。

▶ He cried because his knee hurt. 他膝盖受伤, 所以哭了起来。

▶ The child cried for his mother. 那孩子哭着要妈妈。

搭配 cry for joy 喜极而泣

cry with pain/hunger 痛/饿得哭起来

② a) make sb. do sth. 是固定句式, 意为“使某人做某事”。

▶ My father made me read English this morning. 今天早上, 我父亲让我读英语。

▶ The teacher made him finish his homework. 老师让他完成他的家庭作业。

b) feel v. 感到; 觉得

▶ He began to feel afraid. 他开始感到害怕。

▶ I feel bad now. 我现在感觉很不好。

搭配 feel + n. + do/doing 感觉/觉得……
feel like (doing) 喜欢; 想做

拓展 feel 的两种意义:

人	feel	adj.	◇(感觉……)
物		adj.	◇(摸起来给人……感觉)

▶ I feel cold. 我觉得冷。

▶ This kind of cloth feels smooth. 这种布料摸起来很滑。

对于 feel 的多个词义你都掌握了吗? 请点击下框“一言辨异”。

③ decide to do 决定/下决心做某事

▶ I decided to tell him about it. 我决定要告诉他那件事。

▶ I decided to help him. 我决定帮助他。

联想 decide on (doing) sth. 决定(做)某事

▶ We must decide on a topic before we start to write. 我们必须确定一个题目再着手写。

▶ She decided on going there. 她决定去那里。

非常点拨

真题回放

(2009·吉林通化)

The woman made her son _____ finally after she told him some jokes.

- A. laughed B. to laugh C. laugh D. laughing

【解析】C. 题意: 当她讲了几个笑话后, 这个妇女最后使她的儿子笑了。make sb. do sth. “使某人做某事”。

一言辨异

Ice feels cold, if you feel it for a while, you will feel cold. 冰摸起来凉, 如果你摸它一会儿, 就会感觉到冷。

——第一个 feel 是系动词“摸起来”; 第二个 feel 是行为动词“摸”; 第三个 feel 是系动词“感觉”。

Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> vacation
假期 | <input type="checkbox"/> museum
博物馆 | <input type="checkbox"/> mountain
山区 | <input type="checkbox"/> summer camp
夏令营 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> stayed at home
呆在家里 | <input type="checkbox"/> visited
参观 | <input type="checkbox"/> delicious
可口的 | <input type="checkbox"/> awful
可怕的 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> cheap
便宜的 | <input type="checkbox"/> crowded
拥挤的 | | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Make a survey and complete the form.

进行调查然后完成表格。

1. **Make** questions about vacations.
提出有关假期的问题。
2. Answer the questions yourself.
自己回答调查表。
3. Ask your **classmates** the questions.
问你的同学这些问题。
4. **Discuss** with your classmates the best place for a vacation.
与你的同学讨论度假的最佳地点。
5. Write a **report** on students' vacations.
写一篇学生假期报告。

NAME: 姓名	AGE: 年龄	SEX: 性别	DATE: 日期
Place 地点			
Activities 活动			
Food 食品			
Weather 天气			

- **make** [meɪk] *v.* 做; 制作
- **classmate** ['klæsmeɪt], ['klɑ:smeɪt] *n.* 同班同学
- **discuss** [dɪ'skʌs] *v.* 讨论; 议论
- **report** [rɪ'pɔ:(r)t] *n.* 报告; 汇报
- **sex** [seks] *n.* 性别

Self Check

① **make** *v.* 做; 制作

› Mother made a big cake. 妈妈做了一个大蛋糕。

› He made a model plane out of wood. 他用木头制作了一架飞机模型。

搭配 be made from 用……制成

be made of 用……构成

be made into 把……做成……

提示 be made of/from, be made into 的区别:

成品 + be made $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{of} + \text{材料 (不变质)} \\ \text{from} + \text{材料 (变质)} \end{array} \right.$

材料 + be made into + 成品

› Wine is made from grapes. 葡萄酒是葡萄制成的。

› Grapes are made into wine. 葡萄被制成酒。

› The house is made of wood. 这所房子是木头制成的。

提示 请点击下框“图解助记”，进一步学习 make 的搭配。

② **discuss** *v.* 讨论; 议论

› We discussed when to go. 我们商量什么时候动身。

› I will discuss the question with him later. 我稍后要和他讨论这个问题。

搭配 discuss sth. with sb. 和某人讨论某事

拓展 discussion *n.* 讨论; 议论

③ **report** *n.* [C]/*v.* 报告; 汇报

› We're listening to a report. 我们正在听报告。

› We must report it to our teacher. 我们必须把这件事汇报给老师。

搭配 a newspaper report 新闻报道

make a report 作报告

It is reported that... 据报道……



非常点拨

图解

助记 make 的搭配



真题回放

(2008·山东泰安)

—This wine tastes a little bit strange.

—It is. It's made _____ apples.

A. of B. from C. by D. in

【解析】 B. 题意:“这酒品尝起来有点怪。”“是的。它是用苹果酿制的。”be made of/from 都可意为“由……制成”, of 说明能看出原材料, from 说明看不出原材料, 所以选 B。



语法在线

一般过去时句式变换

1. 陈述句变为一般疑问句

(1) was, were, could, would, should 等系动词和情态动词移到句首。

▶ They were at home last Sunday. 他们上星期天在家。

→ Were they at home last Sunday? (Yes, they were. /No, they weren't.)

▶ Children should obey their parents. 儿童应该服从他们的父母。

→ Should children obey their parents? (Yes, they should. /No, they shouldn't.)

(2) 谓语是除情态动词、助动词、系动词 was, were 以外的动词时, 在主语之前加 did, 动词还原为原形。

▶ He went to Guangzhou yesterday. 他昨天到广州去了。

→ Did he go to Guangzhou yesterday? (Yes, he did. /No, he didn't.)

2. 肯定句变为否定句

(1) 当句中含有系动词 was, were 时, 可直接在其后加 not 构成否定句。

▶ I was on the Internet when you walked into my bedroom. 你进入我的卧室时, 我正在上网。

→ I was not/wasn't on the Internet when you walked into my bedroom.

(2) 当句中含有情态动词或助动词 could, would, should 等时, 可直接在其后面加 not 构成否定句。

▶ I could get you a nice bike. 我可以给你一辆好的自行车。

→ I could not/couldn't get you a nice bike.

▶ I would go to see the film. 我要看一看这部电影。

→ I would not/wouldn't go to see the film.

(3) 当句中谓语是除系动词 was, were, 情态动词和助动词以外的动词时, 在该动词之前加 did not/didn't, 动词还原为动词原形。

▶ They went swimming last week. 他们上星期去游泳了。

→ They did not/didn't go swimming last week.

▶ my friends and I cleaned up the park last weekend. 上周末我和我的朋友清扫了这个公园。

→ My friends and I did not/ didn't clean up the park last weekend.

3. 陈述句变为特殊疑问句

根据划线部分确定疑问词, 然后用疑问词+情态动词/助动词/was/were/did+主语+...?

▶ They gave the concert at the Worker Stadium last night. 昨天晚上他们在工人体育馆举行一场音乐会。

→ What did they give at the Worker Stadium last night? (提问 concert)

→ Where did they give the concert last night? (提问 Worker Stadium)

→ When did they give the concert at the Worker Stadium? (提问 last night)

▲ 当提问部分是主语时, 可直接用疑问词替换主语, 句子语序不变。

▶ She gave him a pound for his help. 她付给他一英镑作为帮忙的酬金。

→ Who gave him a pound for his help?



点击名题

1. —I called you just now, but nobody answered. Where _____ ?

—I was out with my mother.

A. were you

B. are you

C. have you gone

D. have you been

【解析】题意：“我刚才给你打电话了，但是没有人接，你刚才在哪儿？”“我和我妈妈在外面。”句中问的是打电话的时候在哪儿，是发生在过去的事情，所以用一般过去时态。

【答案】A

2. We believe that Mary _____ take the money at that time, though she was poor.

A. won't

B. wouldn't

C. is not going to

【解析】题意：我们相信玛丽那时没有拿那笔钱，尽管她很穷。由 at that time 知应用一般过去时态。won't “不会，不能”，用于将来时态；wouldn't “不可能”，用于表示对过去的推测；is not going to “将不会，不打算”，用于将来时态。

【答案】B

3. —Did you see Mr. Smith when you were in France?

—No, when I _____ France, he had gone to China.

A. had arrived to

B. arrived to

C. had got to

D. got to

【解析】题意：“你在法国的时候看到史密斯先生了吗？”“没有，我到达法国的时候，他已经去了中国。”“到达法国”的动作发生在“去中国”这一动作之前，后者用过去完成时，前者应用一般过去时。get to 意为“到达……，没有 arrive to 的用法。”

【答案】D

4. —Look at the sign. Reading aloud is not allowed in the reading-room.

—Oh, I'm sorry. I _____.

A. don't notice

B. didn't notice

C. wasn't noticing

D. wasn't notice

【解析】题意：“看这个标志。在阅览室不允许大声朗读。”“抱歉，我刚才没注意到。”表示过去发生的动作，用一般过去时。

【答案】B

5. —These foreigners have been to Tibet before.

—Really? When _____ there?

A. will they go

B. did they go

C. have they gone

【解析】题意：“这些外国人之前去过西藏。”“真的吗？他们什么时候去的那里？”询问过去具体的时间用一般过去时。

【答案】B

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·湖北武汉)

—When _____ your mother _____ you that blue dress, Mary?

—Sorry, I really can't remember.

A. does; buy

B. has; bought

C. had; bought

D. did; buy

【解析】D。题意：“你妈妈什么时候给你买的那件蓝裙子，玛丽？”“抱歉，我真的不记得了。”询问过去的事情用一般过去时。

真题回放

(2008·福建漳州)

—Helen, where is your homework?

—Sorry, Miss Read. I _____ some of it last night. But I haven't finished doing it yet.

A. do

B. did

C. have done

D. will do

【解析】B。题意：“海伦，你的作业呢？”“抱歉，里德老师，我昨天晚上做了一部分，但是我还没有做完。”由时间状语 last night 判断要用一般过去时态。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- What do you think _____ the book?
A. to B. over C. of D. on
- I don't like him, because he is _____.
A. friends B. friendly
C. unfriendly D. unfriend
- The beef noodles are really _____ and I like to eat them.
A. awful B. delicious
C. crowded D. expensive
- There are so many people on the bus. It's _____.
A. crowd B. crowded
C. crowdes D. crowds
- I decided _____ the Great Wall this summer.
A. to visit B. visiting
C. visit D. to visiting
- The coat is _____, so I can't buy it.
A. expensive B. good-looking
C. cheap D. beautiful
- Linda often helps her mother _____ the house.
A. cleaning B. cleans
C. clean D. to cleaning
- Tom _____ watch TV after dinner last night.
A. isn't B. wasn't
C. doesn't D. didn't
- Alan is sitting _____ the corner of his room.
A. at B. in C. on D. with
- The bad news makes me _____ sad.
A. to feel B. feel C. feeling D. felt
- Did you go to the mountains yesterday?
—_____.
A. Yes, I did B. Yes, I do
C. No, I don't D. No, I did
- His grammar is _____, so he needs my help.
A. awful B. good
C. interesting D. funny
- How was your summer camp?
—_____. I had a good time with my friends.
A. Terrible B. Fantastic
C. Really D. Regular
- They had a great fun _____ in the lake.
A. swim B. swimming
C. to swim D. swimmied
- We _____ our plans for the new term yesterday.
A. practiced B. thought
C. discussed D. answered

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个

选项中选择最佳的一项。

I'm a businessman(商人). My job is to sell computers. I work very 1. Every morning I get up at seven. I do morning exercises and have 2. Then I 3 my office. It 4 me forty minutes.

Every year I have a long holiday. Then I can stay 5 my family. Last summer my family and I had a good rest. We went to a town near the sea. Every day we had a swim. When it rained, I did some 6 or 7. We had 8 seafood. We 9 there for half a month. We had a lot of 10.

- A. good B. nice C. hard D. better
- A. breakfast B. lunch
C. supper D. dinner
- A. walks to B. drive to
C. went to D. ran to
- A. spends B. cost C. takes D. spent
- A. at B. in C. with D. on
- A. read B. reading C. reads D. reades
- A. watching TV B. see TV
C. watched TV D. watches TV
- A. a lot B. a lot of
C. many D. lot of
- A. are B. was C. were D. stays
- A. fun B. funny C. fantastic D. time

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

Last Sunday it was snowy. Maria stayed at home. Her cousin Cara came to visit her. She came back from Beijing. She told Maria something about her vacation. "It was pretty good," She said. Cara visited the Palace Museum and the Great Wall. She took a lot of photos.

It was lunch time. Maria's parents were not at home. They decided to cook by themselves. Maria cooked some noodles with some pepperoni, tomatoes and peppers. After Cara ate up the noodles, she said slowly, "I think it is delicious!" But Maria thought the food was too awful. She said, "Cara, thank you, but I put too much peppers."

- How was the weather? It was _____.
A. sunny B. snowy C. cloudy D. rainy
- Where did Cara go on vacation?
A. Beijing. B. Sichuan. C. Hunan. D. Yunnan.
- _____ cooked noodles.
A. Cara B. Maria
C. Maria's mother D. Cara's mother
- There were some _____ with the noodles.
A. peppers, mushrooms and tomatoes
B. pepperoni and peppers
C. peppers, pepperoni and tomatoes

- D. peppers and tomatoes
5. What did Maria think of the noodles? _____.
- A. Awful B. Delicious
- C. We don't know D. Good

B

Linda Green works for a big trading company. Her job is important. So, she has to work a lot—sometimes 60 or 70 hours a week. Linda doesn't like to rest. She never takes vacation. In the morning, afternoon, and even in her dreams, she thinks about business. Once, at 6:30 pm, her colleague Stan said, "It's late. You should go home."

"That's impossible," Linda said, "I have to finish the report. I have to write three letters. And I have to..."

"OK, OK, I understand. Maybe you should put a bed in your office," Stan said. "Then, you can live here."

"That's a good idea!" she said.

"It's a joke," Stan said. "You do need a vacation."

6. What does Linda like to do?
- A. Work a lot. B. Go home early.
- C. Take vacations. D. Rest at home.
7. What does she think about a lot?
- A. Her family. B. Her friends.
- C. Business. D. Food.
8. Linda has to stay at work to _____.
- A. talk to her boss B. receive a fax
- C. make a phone call D. write some letters
9. Stan _____.
- A. doesn't care about Linda
- B. also likes to work at night
- C. is worried about Linda
- D. needs a vacation
10. Where does Linda want to sleep?
- A. At home. B. At the office.
- C. In her car. D. At a hotel.

IV. 任务型阅读(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

Mr and Mrs Wilson lived in a big city. One summer they went to the country for their holiday. They enjoyed it very much, because it was a quiet and clean place.

One day they went for a walk early in the morning and saw an old man. He lived on a farm, and he was sitting alone in the warm sun in front of his house. Mr Wilson asked him, "Do you like living in this quiet place?"

The old man said, "Yes, I do."

Mr Wilson said, "What are the good things about it?"

The old man answered, "Well, everybody here knows each other. People often come to see me, and I often go to see them. And there are lots of children here."

Mr Wilson said, "That's interesting. And what are the bad things?"

The old man thought for a minute and said, "Well, the same things."

根据短文内容,判断句子正(T)误(F)。

- Mr and Mrs Wilson went to another country for their summer vacation.
- The country was a quiet, clean place.
- One day the old man was sitting in front of his house with a lot of children.
- The old man liked his life.

5. People knew each other in the country and they often visited each other.

V. 单词拼写(共 10 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

- Today is a _____ (多雨的) day.
- My brother is _____ (哭) at home.
- This is a _____ (极好的) play.
- How many _____ (角落) are there in the room?
- We went _____ (野营) in the mountains last week.
- It made him f_____ sad.
- I don't want this e_____ skirt.
- Did you visit the m_____? There are all kinds of plants there.
- He thinks the food is d_____.
- You need a g_____ to show you the city.

VI. 句型转换(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

- They had a lot of fun yesterday. (改为否定句)
They _____ a lot of fun yesterday.
- I didn't have any money for a taxi. (改为同义句)
I _____ money for a taxi.
- He went to summer camp. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ he _____ to summer camp?
- Did Mary study with you? (作否定回答)
_____, _____.
- I was late for school this morning. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ late for school this morning?

VII. 翻译填空(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

- 你能告诉我去阅览室的路吗?我迷路了。
Can you tell me the way _____ the library? I'm _____.
- 昨天晚上我太累了,因此九点就上床睡觉了。
I _____ tired yesterday evening, so I _____ to bed at nine.
- 他们决定去看电影。
They _____ go to the movies.
- 我所有的朋友都去海滩了。
_____ my friends _____ to the beach.
- 玛丽看见地上有一块手表。
Mary _____ a watch _____ on the ground.

VIII. 书面表达(满分 15 分)

根据中英文提示词,写一篇 60 词左右的短文,注意时态。

提示:昨天,天气晴朗,五班的同学到公园植树了,同学们相互帮助,他们在那里度过了愉快的一天。

- yesterday, sunny
- Class 5, plant trees
- get there, nine, morning, work hard, help each other, back to school at four, afternoon
- tired, happy, have fun

Unit 11

What do you think of game shows?
你认为游戏节目怎么样?

Language Goals: Give opinions; Talk about likes and dislikes

语言目标: 给出建议; 谈论好恶



英汉对照



考点注释

Section A

A部分

1a

Match the TV shows with the pictures [a-e].

将电视节目与对应图片[a-e]联系起来。

What do you think of soap operas?
你怎么看待肥皂剧?I can't stand them.
我无法忍受。

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. talk show e
谈话节目 | 2. soap opera
肥皂剧 |
| 3. sports show
体育节目 | 4. sitcom (situation comedy)
情景喜剧 |
| 5. game show
游戏节目 | MONEY or NOTHING
金钱或一无所有 |

1b

Listen. What does Mark say about TV shows? Write a letter [a-e] from 1a.
听录音。马克关于电视节目说了些什么? 用 1a 中的字母[a-e]填空。

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----|----------------------|---|
| 1. _____ loves
热爱 | 😊😊 | 2. _____ likes
喜欢 | 😊 |
|----------------------|----|----------------------|---|

本页生词

- soap [səʊp] *n.* 肥皂
- soap opera 肥皂剧; 连续剧
- stand [stænd] *v.* 忍受
- sitcom ['sɪtkɔ:m], ['sɪtkɒm] *n.* (= situation comedy) 情景喜剧
- situation [ˌsɪtʃu'eɪʃən] *n.* 情景; 形势
- nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] *pron.* 没有什么; 没有东西

非常点拨

图解

助记 stand 的一词多义



站立



恶劣条件

忍受

stand



一言辨异

She can't stand being kept standing. 她不能忍受久站。

——stand 原义“站立”→stand“忍受”也带有其原来“站立而不倒”的含义, 即强调“不屈不挠”或“经受得起”。

Section A

① stand *v.* 忍受

▶ I can't stand the cold there. 我忍受不了那里的严寒。

▶ Could you stand to go there again? 你受得了明天还去那里吗?

搭配 stand to do 忍受做某事
doing

stand 还有“站, 站立”的意思, 如何准确理解 stand 的一词多义? 请点击下框“图解助记”与“一言辨异”。

② situation *n.* [C] 情景; 形势

▶ He is in a bad situation. 他处境不好。

▶ We are in a difficult situation now. 我们目前所处的形势很困难。

搭配 get into/out of a difficult situation 陷入/摆脱困境

③ nothing *pron.* 没什么; 没有东西*n.* [C] 无关紧要的人(或事)

▶ Nothing can stop us now. 现在没有什么能够阻止我们了。

▶ There is nothing in it. 这里面空无一物。

▶ The man is a nothing. 这个人是无名之辈。

参考答案

• 1a 1. e 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. b

3. _____ doesn't **mind** ☹️
_____ 不在意
4. _____ doesn't like ☹️
_____ 不喜欢
5. _____ can't stand ☹️☹️
_____ 不能忍受

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation below. Then make your own conversations.

练习下面的对话。 然后编写你自己的对话。

A: What do you think of sitcoms? 你认为情景喜剧怎么样?

B: I love them. 我爱看。

2a Listen and number the expressions [1-5] as you hear them.

听录音并且一边听一边给下面的词语编号[1-5]。

- a. _____ love b. _____ like c. _____ don't mind
_____ 热爱 _____ 喜欢 _____ 不在意
- d. _____ don't like e. _____ can't stand
_____ 不喜欢 _____ 不能忍受

2b Listen again. Fill in the blanks. 再听一遍。填空。

A: What do you **think of** *Dumpling King* ?

你对《饺子大王》有什么看法?

B: I love it. 我爱看。

A: Do you like Er Bao? 你 二宝 吗?

B: No, I don't like him. But I love his brother, Xiao Bao. **How about**

不,我 不喜欢 他。但是我 喜欢 他的兄弟,小宝。 **你怎么样?**

A: I don't like him. **In fact**, I love like sitcoms.

我不喜欢他。 **实际上**,我 喜欢 情景喜剧。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Practice the conversation in 2b. Then talk about TV shows you know.

练习 2b 中的对话。 然后谈论你所知道的电视节目。

What do you think of *Dumpling King*?
你对《饺子大王》有什么看法?



I love it.
我喜爱它。

- **mind** [maɪnd] v. 介意
- **king** [kɪŋ] n. 君主; 国王
- How about...?怎么样?
- **fact** [fækt] n. 事实; 实际情况
- in fact 实际上; 其实; 确切地说

4 mind v. 介意

▶ I don't mind changing places with you. 我不介意与你换一换位置。

▶ Do/Would you mind my standing here? 我站在这儿你不介意吧?

▶ Do/Would you mind if I smoke? 我抽烟你介意吗?

搭配 Do } you mind { (one's) doing? 你
Would } if 从句 介意……吗?

▶ Never mind. 没关系。

▶ mind 后接动名词或名词,不接不定式。

拓展 mind v. 当心,注意

▶ Mind your head when you come in. 进来的时候当心别碰了头。

技巧 如何记忆 mind 的一词多义? 请点击下框“图解助记”。

5 think of 考虑; 想出; 提出, 建议

▶ I hope you can think of it. 我希望你能考虑一下。

▶ Mike thought of a new way to play the game. 迈克想出了一个玩游戏的新方法。

▶ What do you think of my new bike? 你觉得我的新自行车怎么样?

拓展 think of... as 把……看做是……

▶ think better of 经考虑对……改变看法

▶ think highly of 对……评价很高

▶ think much/little of 认为……很不错/没有什么了不起

▶ Think nothing of it. 哪儿的话。(对于道歉或道谢的客气回答)

6 in fact 实际上; 其实; 确切地说

▶ I don't like modern music, in fact, I hate it. 我不很喜欢现代音乐,说句老实话,我其实很讨厌现代音乐。

▶ He is, in fact, a hard worker. 他其实是个苦干的人。

▶ I think so; in fact, I am quite sure. 我想如此,确切地说,我非常确信。

联想 The fact is that... 事实上……

▶ The fact is that I told a lie. 事实上我撒了个谎。

拓展 fact n. 事实; 实际情况

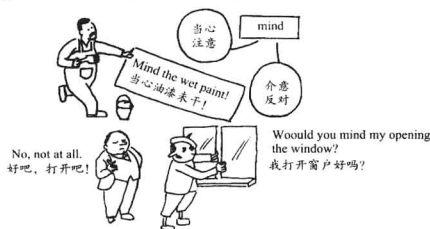
参考答案

- 1b 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. e
- 2a 1 2 4 5 3
- 2b (1) love
(2) like
(3) can't stand
(4) don't mind
(5) don't like

非常点拨

图解

助记 mind 的一词多义



真题回放

(2008·湖北咸宁)

—Would you mind _____ your bike?

—No, not at all. I'll put it under the tree right away.

- A. move B. to move
C. moves D. moving

【解析】D. 题意:“你介意挪一挪你的自行车吗?”“不,不介意的。我马上把它放在树底下。”mind doing sth. “介意干某事”,为固定用法。

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What do you think of soap operas?

你认为肥皂剧怎么样?

What do you think of sports shows?

你认为体育节目怎么样?

What does she think of *Dumpling King*?

她认为《饺子大王》怎么样?

What do they think of Anna?

他们对安娜怎么看?

I can't stand them.

我不能忍受。

I don't mind them.

我不在意。

She doesn't like it.

她不喜欢看。

They love her.

他们喜爱她。

3a PAIRWORK 结对活动

Student A, looks at this page. Student B, looks at page 81. (Don't look at your

学生 A 看这一页。学生 B 看 81 页。(不要看你同伴的那一页!)

partner's page!) What do Yang Lin and Alan think of these CCTV shows?

杨林和阿伦认为中央电视台的这些节目怎么样?

Ask and answer questions and then fill in the blanks.

提问并回答问题,然后填空。

What does Alan think of *Sports News*?^⑦

阿伦认为体育新闻怎么样?



He likes it.
他喜欢它。

	English	Sports	Healthy	Culture ^⑧	Chinese	Animal
	Today	News	Living	China	Cooking	World
	今日英语	体育新闻	健康生活	中国文化	中国烹调	动物世界
Yang Lin	loves		doesn't like		can't stand	
杨林	热爱		不喜欢		受不了	
Alan		likes		likes		doesn't mind
阿伦		喜欢		喜欢		不在意

3b Use the information in 3a and fill in the blanks.

利用 3a 中的信息并填空。

Host^⑨: Welcome to 9 o'clock *Weekend Talk*. We're talking to Alan,

主持人: 欢迎收看九点钟的周末谈话节目。我们将与十三岁的男孩

a thirteen-year-old^⑩ boy. Welcome to the show, Alan.

阿伦谈话。阿伦, 欢迎你。

Alan: Thank you. 阿伦: 谢谢。

Host: Do you like to watch TV?

主持人: 你喜欢看电视吗?

Alan: Yes, I do. 阿伦: 是的, 我喜欢。

(1)

• culture ['kʌltʃə(r)] n. 文化 • host [həʊst] n. 主持人

⑦ What does Alan think of Sports News? 阿伦认为体育新闻怎么样?

这是一个询问某人建议的句型, 本句中问间接询问第三者的建议, 所以使用了第三人称单数的助动词 does 来提问。

通常我们使用第二人称句式: What do you think of ...? “你认为……怎么样?”

▶ What does your brother think of the film? 你哥哥觉得这部电影如何?

▶ What do you think of the book? 你认为这本书怎么样?

⑧ culture n. [U,C] 文化

▶ Schools are centres of culture. 学校是文化的中心。

▶ She is studying the cultures of America. 她正在研究美国的文化。

▶ Culture is important for a company. 文化对一家企业来说很重要。

搭配 Culture Day 文化节

拓展 cultural adj. 文化的

⑨ host n. [C] 主持人

▶ He Jiong is a well-known host. 何灵是一位有名的主持人。

▶ I want to be a host in the future. 将来我想成为一名主持人。

拓展 a) host n. 主人; 东道主

▶ The host is kind to us. 主人对我们很好。

b) host v. 主持; 主办; 以主人身份招待

▶ Which country will host the international tennis tournament? 哪个国家将会主办国际网球锦标赛。



master 也有“主人”的意思, 你知道它和 host 的区别吗? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

⑩ thirteen-year-old 是合成形容词, 意思是“十三岁的”, 修饰名词, 作前置定语, year 用单数; 但是 thirteen years old 意思是“十三岁”, 作表语或后置定语。

▶ Maria is a twelve-year-old girl. 玛丽亚是一个 12 岁的女孩。

▶ She is twelve years old. 她 12 岁。



请点击下框“归纳拓展”, 学习这类结构。

此类复合形容词结构为: 数词+单位词单数+形容词 (long 长/wide 宽/high 高/tall 高/deep 深/thick 厚/old……岁)。

参考答案

- 3a Yang Lin: loves likes doesn't like
likes can't stand doesn't like
Alan: loves likes doesn't like
likes can't stand doesn't mind

非常点拨

妙辨异同 host, master.

host(主人)与 guest(s)(客人)相对应。而 master(主人)与 servant(仆人)相对应。即 host 招待的是 guest

(s); master 指使的是 servant

(s)(仆人)。同为“主人”, 内涵各异:

master (男)主人	host (男)主人
mistress 女主人	hostess 女主人

归纳拓展

合成形容词

- a five-meter-long rope 一条 5 米长的绳子
- a twenty-meter-wide river 一条 20 米宽的河
- a ten-meter-tall tree 一棵 10 米高的树
- a forty-feet-deep well 一口 40 英尺深的井

Host: What do you think of *Sports News*?
 主持人: 你认为体育新闻怎么样?
 Alan: (2) .
 阿伦: .
 Host: I do, too! ⑩ How about *Healthy Living*? ⑪
 主持人: 我也是这样! 健康生活怎么样?
 Alan: (3) .
 阿伦: .
 Host: Really? What do you think of (4) ?
 主持人: 真的? 你认为 怎么样?
 Alan: I love it.
 阿伦: 我爱看。
 Host: And *Culture China*?
 主持人: 中国文化呢?
 Alan: (5) .
 阿伦: .
 Host: How about *Chinese Cooking*?
 主持人: 中国烹调怎么样?
 Alan: Oh, I can't stand it. Cooking is for moms!
 阿伦: 哦,我受不了。 烹调是妈妈们干的!
 Host: OK! Thanks for joining us, Alan! ⑫ Next we're talking to...
 主持人: 好! 谢谢你参加我们的节目,阿伦! 下面我们将与……谈话。

4 SURVEY 调查

Write the names of more TV shows below. Fill in the blanks with what you think. Find students who agree with you.
 在下面写出更多的电视节目。 将你的看法填在空格里。
 找出跟你意见一致的同学。

TV shows 电视节目	What I think 我的看法	Students who agree with ⑬ me 同意我意见的同学
Tell it like it is! 实话实说	I love it. 我喜爱它。	Lin Peng 林朋

What do you think of *Tell it like it is!*?
 你认为“实话实说”怎么样?



I love it.
我喜爱这个节目。



I do, too.
我也是。

• agree [ə'gri:] v. 同意;赞成

• agree with 赞同;持相同意见

⑪ I do, too! “我也是这样!”,其否定形式是“I don't, either.”

▶ I like TV shows. 我喜欢电视节目。

—I do, too. 我也是。

▶ I don't like the soap opera. 我不喜欢肥皂剧。

—I don't, either. 我也不喜欢。

▲ too 用于句子中间时,前后常有逗号隔开。

⑫ How about *Healthy Living*? “健康生活怎么样?”How about...是我们询问他人建议的一个省略句式,可以和 What about... 互换使用。其后可以跟名词、代词和动名词形式。

▶ How/What about next Saturday? 下周六如何?

▶ How/What about this one? 这个如何?

▶ How/What about going there by train? 坐火车去如何?

⑬ Thanks for joining us, Alan! “谢谢你参加我们的节目,阿伦。”Thanks for... 意思是“因……而感谢”,后常跟名词和动名词形式。

▶ Thanks for your help. 谢谢你的帮助。

▶ Thanks for helping me. 谢谢你帮我。

⑭ agree with 赞同;持相同意见

▶ I'm sorry. I can't agree with you. 对不起,我不同意你的观点。

▶ Do you agree with us? 你同意我们的意见吗?

☞ agree with sb. about sth. 在某方面赞同某人的意见

☞ agree with 还可用作主语,表示“与……一致”或“(食物、气候等)适合”。

▶ The cold weather didn't agree with him. 那寒冷的气候对他不合适。

▶ His words doesn't agree with his actions. 他言行不一致。

☞ 你知道 agree on, agree to, agree with 的用法区别吗? 请点击下框“一言辨异”和“妙辨异同”。

非常点拨

一言辨异

Tom asked me if my wife **agreed** to spend the holiday in the north, I said that she **agreed to** my idea, so we **agreed on** a date for it, and my wife **agreed with** what we did. 汤姆问我太太是否同意去北方度假,我说她同意我的想法,因此我们就定了个日子,我太太对我们的做法表示同意。

妙辨异同 agree on, agree to, agree with

agree on

是指双方或多方协商后“在……方面取得一致意见”。

agree to (do) sth.

“同意(做)某事”,表示愿意接受某事或允许某事发生,重在“接受”、“答应”。

agree with

指“同意、赞成某人(的意见)”,重在“赞同”。

Section B

B部分

1a Match the words with the pictures.

- 将单词与图片联系起来。
- | | | | |
|------|----------------|----|--------------|
| 1. b | sunglasses 太阳镜 | 2. | belt 皮带 |
| 3. | scarf 头巾 | 4. | watch 手表 |
| 5. | wallet 钱包 | 6. | key ring 钥匙链 |



1b How many of these things do you have? Tell the class.
你有多少这些东西? 告诉你的同学们。

Well, I have a watch, a scarf and sunglasses.
瞧,我有一只表、一条头巾和一副太阳镜。



2a Listen. In the chart, write the things that Maria, Carol, and Paul talk about.

Thing 物品	Carol... 卡罗尔	Paul... 保罗
watch 表	loves 喜爱	doesn't mind 不在意

2b Listen again. What do Carol and Paul think of each thing?

再听一遍。卡罗尔和保罗对每件物品有什么看法?

Fill in the chart above with the words below.

用下面的词语填上面的表格。

loves likes doesn't mind doesn't like can't stand
喜爱 喜欢 不在乎 不喜欢 不能忍受

2c GROUPWORK 小组活动

Ask and answer questions about what your parents think of the things in 1a.
就你父母对 1a 中物品的看法提问并给予回答。



- sunglasses ['sʌŋglæsɪz], ['sʌŋglɑːsɪz] n. (pl.) 太阳镜
- belt [belt] n. 皮带
- wallet ['wɔːlɪt], ['wɒlɪt] n. 钱包
- key ring 钥匙链
- article ['ɑː(r)tɪkəl] n. 文章
- by [baɪ] prep. 由; 被
- fashion ['fæʃən] n. 时尚; 潮流



What does your father think of the watch?
你父亲认为这只手表怎么样?



He doesn't mind it.
他没在意。



3a Read Maria's article^① from the school magazine. Fill in names of students in the chart on page 82.
阅读玛丽亚在学校杂志上的文章。在 82 页的表格中填写学生的名字。

What's Cool?

什么是酷?

by^② Maria Lee

作者: 玛丽亚·李

This week, I asked students about **fashion**. I showed 本周,我就流行时尚问了同学们。 我把 each student six things and asked them about each one. 六件物品给每个同学看,然后询问他们对每件物品的看法。 Some of their answers were interesting. Here are their likes 他们的一些回答很有意思。 下面就是他们喜 and dislikes: 欢的和不喜欢:

Judy Smith likes the key ring. Her friend Jeff says 朱蒂·史密斯喜欢钥匙扣。 她的朋友杰夫说他对他 he can't stand the scarf. "It's for moms!" he said. William 头巾感到受不了。 "那是妈妈们用的!"他说。威 Jones loves the wallet, and his classmate Gina Taylor loves 廉·琼斯很喜欢钱包,而他的同学吉娜·泰勒很喜欢手 the watch. (Her best friend Ann Rice doesn't mind the 表。 (她最好的朋友安·赖斯不在乎手表,但 watch, but she really likes the sunglasses!) Jerry Green 是她确实喜欢太阳镜!) 杰瑞·格 also likes the sunglasses. 林也喜欢太阳镜。

And the coolest thing was the belt. Everyone loved it!
最酷的物品就是皮带。 人人都爱它!

参考答案

- 3b (1) Yes, I do. (2) I like it. (3) I don't like it. (4) English Today (5) I like it.
- 1a 1. b 2. a 3. e 4. c 5. f 6. d
- 2a watch sunglasses scarf wallet
- 2b Carol: loves likes can't stand loves
Paul: doesn't mind likes doesn't like likes

非常点拨

词汇绿卡

① article n. [C] 文章

- ▶ I just read an interesting article. 我刚读了一篇有趣的文章。
 - ▶ He is writing an article on geography. 他正在写一篇地理方面的文章。
- 搭配 article 后接 on/about, 表示某方面的文章。

词汇绿卡

② by prep. 由; 被

- ▶ The child was saved by a woman. 这孩子是由一位妇女救活的。
 - ▶ This bridge was built by the workers. 这座桥是工人们造的。
- 提示 by 作为“由; 被”讲时, 常用来引出被动语态动作的执行人。

3b Look at 1a on page 68. Then fill in the blanks below to complete the letter to Maria.

Dear Maria,
亲爱的玛丽亚:

I enjoyed^③ reading your "What's Cool?" article in the school magazine, and would like to tell you what "酷?"。我想告诉你我的看法。

I think, I ⁽¹⁾ the belt, and I ⁽²⁾ the sunglasses.

我 ⁽¹⁾ 皮带, 我 ⁽²⁾ 太阳镜。

I ⁽³⁾ the key ring, I ⁽⁴⁾ the scarf, I ⁽⁵⁾

我 ⁽³⁾ 钥匙扣, 我 ⁽⁴⁾ 头巾, 我 ⁽⁵⁾ 手表, and I ⁽⁶⁾ the wallet. Can you please

表, 我 ⁽⁶⁾ 钱包。请问你能把我的 put^④ my letter in next month's magazine? 信发表在下期杂志上吗?

Yours,
你的

4 SURVEY 调查

Make a list of five more things. Ask your classmates what they think of each thing. 将另外五件物品列一张表。询问你的同学对每件物品的看法。

What do you think of sunglasses?
你认为太阳镜怎么样?



I can't stand them.
我讨厌太阳镜。



Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know. 关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> talk show
谈话节目/脱口秀 | <input type="checkbox"/> soap opera
肥皂剧 | <input type="checkbox"/> sports show
体育节目 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> sitcom
情景喜剧 | <input type="checkbox"/> love
喜爱 | <input type="checkbox"/> like
喜欢 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> don't mind
不在乎 | <input type="checkbox"/> don't like
不喜欢 | <input type="checkbox"/> can't stand
不能忍受 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> sunglasses
太阳镜 | <input type="checkbox"/> scarf
头巾 | <input type="checkbox"/> watch
手表 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> wallet
钱包 | <input type="checkbox"/> game show
游戏节目 | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook. 在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 Read what Rose Smith says. Do you agree with her? Write your opinion. 阅读罗斯·史密斯说的话。你同意她的看法吗? 写出你的观点。

I can't stand the idea^① that old people can't be beautiful.

对于老年人不能讲究漂亮的观点我无法忍受。

So I like rings, scarfs and sunglasses. I wear colorful clothes because I want to be young and beautiful. I enjoy because I hope I can be young and beautiful. I enjoy nice words about my looks. And I don't mind what people praise my appearance. I don't care what young people think of me!

我喜欢漂亮的衣服, 因为我希望自己年轻漂亮。我喜欢人们称赞我的外表漂亮。我也不在乎年轻人对我怎么想!

can't stand 不能忍受 don't mind 不在乎
don't like 不喜欢 love 喜爱 like 喜欢

- said [sed] v. say 的过去式
- put [put] v. 放; 摆; 装
- idea [aɪ'diə] n. 主意; 想法
- colorful ['kʌlə(r)fʊl] adj. 色彩鲜艳的

参考答案

- 3a (watch) Gina Taylor loves, Ann Rice doesn't mind (key ring) Jack Smith likes (sunglasses) Ann Rice likes, Jerry Green likes (scarf) Jordan can't stand (wallet) William Jones loves (belt) everyone loves
- 3b 1. like 2. also like 3. can't stand 4. love 5. don't mind 6. really like

Section B

③ enjoy v. 喜爱; 享受……乐趣

- ▶ I enjoyed the party very much. 我非常喜欢这次聚会。
- ▶ I enjoyed reading these books very much. 我很喜欢读这些书。
- 搭配 enjoy oneself 玩得开心

▲ enjoy 后常跟名词、代词或动名词作宾语。

④ put v. 放; 摆; 装

- ▶ Don't put your hands into your pockets. 不要把双手插在衣袋里。
- ▶ He put the cups on the table. 他把杯子摆在桌子上。
- ▶ Open the bag and put the money in. 打开袋子, 把钱装进去。
- 搭配 put away 放好, 把……收拾起来
- put down 把……放下; 写下; 扑灭, 平息
- put on 穿上(衣服), 戴上(帽子等); 上演(戏剧等)
- put up 举起, 抬起

Self Check

① idea n. [C] 主意; 想法

- ▶ The idea that time is money is right. 时间就是金钱的想法是对的。
- ▶ That's not a good idea. 这不是一个好主意。
- 搭配 good idea 好主意
- have no idea (of) 不知道; 无能为力



语法在线

询问别人的观点和对某人/事进行评价

1. What do you think of + 名词/代词/动词-ing 形式? 意思是“你认为……怎么样?”
 - ▶ —What do you think of Beijing Opera? 你认为京剧怎么样?
—I can't stand it. 我不能忍受它。
 - ▶ —What do you think of Amy? 你认为艾米怎么样?
—I don't like her. 我不喜欢她。
 - ▶ —What do you think of travelling to Beijing? 你认为去北京旅游怎么样?
—I don't mind it. 我无所谓。
 2. How about/What about + 名词/代词/动词-ing 形式? 常用来询问别人的观点,意为“……怎么样?”
 - ▶ —How about *Tell It Like It Is*? 《实话实说》栏目怎么样?
—I like it very much. 我很喜欢这个节目。
 - ▶ —How about having a picnic tomorrow? 明天举行野餐怎么样?
—Good idea. 好主意。
 - ▶ —What about football match? 足球赛怎么样?
—I don't like football. 我不喜欢足球。
 - ▶ —What about playing basketball tomorrow? 明天去打篮球怎么样?
—Why not? 为什么不呢?
 3. How do you like...? 用来询问对方观点,与“What do you think of...?”相同。
 - ▶ —How do you like *Hero*? 你觉得《英雄》这部电影怎么样?
—It's not too bad. 还过得去。
 - ▶ —How do you like Chinese food? 你觉得中国菜怎么样?
—Oh, I love it. 哦,我爱吃。
 - ▶ —How do you like swimming in winter? 你喜欢冬泳吗?
—I don't like it. 我不喜欢。
 - ▶ —How do you like the sitcom? 你觉得情景喜剧怎么样?
—I don't like it. 我不喜欢。
- either, too“也”的用法**
- too 主要用于肯定句和疑问句,多用于口语,一般放在句尾,但有时根据修饰的需要,位置也可以灵活变动;either 用于否定句,往往放于句尾。
- ▶ If you would like to go, I will go, too. 如果你去,那我也去。
 - ▶ She can dance and she can sing, too. 她会跳舞,也会唱歌。
 - ▶ I like bananas, but I like oranges, too. 我喜欢香蕉,可我也喜欢柑橘。
 - ▶ She can't speak Chinese and her husband can't either. 她不会说汉语,她丈夫也不会。
 - ▶ I didn't see this film, and my brother didn't either. 我没有看过这部电影,我哥哥也没有。
 - ▶ I can't swim, he can't, either. 我不会游泳,他也不会。



点击名题

1. —What about _____ hiking this Sunday?
—Great. I'd like _____ with you.
A. to go; going B. going; going
C. going; to go
【解析】题意:“这个星期天去远足怎么样?”“太棒了。我想和你一起去。”what about 后用动词的-ing 形式,这是用来提建议的一种句式;would like 后接不定式,表示“愿意……”。
【答案】C
2. —How do you like your Chinese teacher?
—_____.
A. Yes, I like him very much
B. He is very kind
C. I enjoy his class
【解析】题意:“你觉得你的语文老师怎么样?”“他很友善。”A 项是一般疑问句的答语;C 项是对 class 的回答。只有 B 项符合题意。
【答案】B
3. Mary likes dancing. I like it, _____.
A. either B. also C. too
【解析】题意:玛丽喜欢跳舞,我也喜欢。too“也”,用于肯定句中。either“也”,用于否定句中;also 一般不用于句尾。
【答案】C
4. —I haven't seen Bob for a long time.
—I haven't seen him, _____.
A. too B. either C. instead
【解析】题意:“我好久没有看见鲍勃了。”“我也没有看见他。”表示“也,还”时,either 用在否定句中,必须放在句末;too 一般用在肯定句中,放在句末,或作为插入语放在句中,instead“代替”。
【答案】B
5. —How do you like the movie?
—_____.
A. It's wonderful.
B. What about you?
C. No, I don't like it at all.
D. I'd like to see it tomorrow.
【解析】题意:“你认为这部电影怎么样?”“很棒。”How do you like...? 是用来询问对某一事物的看法的,只有 A 项适合用做其答语。
【答案】A

非常点拨

真题回放

(2008·湖北襄樊)

—What do you think of the talk show?

- _____.
- A. Never mind B. It doesn't matter
C. I don't think so D. I can't stand it

【解析】D。题意:“你认为谈话节目怎么样?”“我不能忍受。”I can't stand it“我无法忍受”,符合语境。never mind“不要介意”;it doesn't matter“没有关系”;I don't think so“我不这样认为”。

真题回放

(2008·四川泸州)

Mary likes dancing. I like it, _____.

- A. either B. also C. too

【解析】C。题意:玛丽喜欢跳舞,我也喜欢。too“也”,用于肯定句中。either“也”,用于否定句中;also 一般不用于句尾。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 ◀◀

I. 单项选择 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)
从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- I dislike *Mr Bean* (憨豆先生). _____, I dislike comedies.
A. On fact B. In the fact
C. In fact D. On the fact
- I _____ the book. It is too boring.
A. love B. can't stand
C. don't mind D. would like
- I enjoy pop music. _____ you?
A. How about B. How are
C. What do D. What can
- I like *Sports World*. And you?
—I agree _____ you.
A. to B. about C. on D. with
- I like penguins (企鹅). How about you?
— _____
A. I do, too B. I can, too
C. I don't, either D. I can't either
- The boy has _____ idea after he thinks for 5 minutes.
A. / B. a C. an D. the
- My pen pal is a _____ girl.
A. twelve-years-old B. twelve-year old
C. twelve-year-old D. twelve-years old
- Can you show _____ ?
A. me your watch B. your watch me
C. me to your watch D. your me watch
- Do you _____ opening the window?
—Of course not. Just open it.
A. like B. agree C. mind D. want
- He is in a difficult _____, and we should help him.
A. situation B. station
C. song D. suggestion
- He'd like _____ dinner with you.
A. having B. to have C. has D. have
- The book was written _____ the teacher.
A. with B. of C. in D. by
- What do you think of Tina?
— _____
A. She likes the book
B. She works in a hospital
C. She's cute. I like her
D. She loves reading
- We can find some good news _____ today's newspaper.
A. to B. at C. in D. for
- You can wash your dirty hands with _____.
A. corner B. camp C. soap D. soup

II. 完形填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)
通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Yesterday I talked with three classmates about TV. I asked them _____ 1 _____ they watched TV, and I asked them

_____ 2 _____ their favorite shows. Here's what they _____ 3 _____ me:

Brad watches TV every day. He really loves sitcoms. His favorite _____ 4 _____ is *Jia You Er No*, but he _____ 5 _____ soap operas. He never watches them. He thinks they are _____ 6 _____.

Sandy doesn't watch TV a lot, but she _____ 7 _____ watches soap operas. *Coffee Prince 1st Shop* is her favorite. She likes the actors in it.

Ben doesn't watch TV _____ 8 _____ Monday to Friday, because he has a lot of homework to do. He only watches _____ 9 _____ on Saturday and Sunday. Beckham is his favorite soccer player. His brother likes talk shows, but Ben _____ 10 _____.

- Ben only likes sports shows. /
- A. why B. when C. how D. where
 - A. to B. for C. about D. of
 - A. told B. tell C. say D. said
 - A. animal B. actor C. singer D. sitcom
 - A. can't stand B. loyes
C. doesn't mind D. dislike
 - A. interesting B. boring
C. exciting D. relaxing
 - A. never B. often
C. sometimes D. usually
 - A. from B. on C. in D. during
 - A. sitcoms B. soap operas
C. sports shows D. talk shows
 - A. did B. didn't C. does D. doesn't

III. 阅读理解 (共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)
从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A
There are popular programs about the work of the police on TV. People like them because they are interesting and useful.

In London there is a TV program called *Police Five*. It lasts for five minutes once a week. A TV reporter talks about crimes (犯罪) in London. He asks people for help because the police station needs their help.

During the week the TV reporter shows pictures of lost paintings, lost cars and other lost things. When people see pictures of such things on TV, they may recall (记起) something and tell the police about it. With their help the police may catch more thieves.

Sometimes the police find a very expensive car that has been lost, and the TV reporter shows it on TV. Then the owner may see it and get it back.

- Police Five* is _____.
A. a police station
B. the time of a TV program
C. the name of a TV reporter
D. the name of a TV program
- Police Five* is shown _____.
A. once a week B. seven times a week



- C. five minutes every day D. every day
3. This TV program is about .
A. cars B. pictures
C. crimes D. a TV reporter
4. The police through this TV program.
A. let people know what was lost
B. ask for people's help
C. make the TV audience(观众) feel interested
D. want to sell lost things
5. The police will through this TV program.
A. find the owner B. not catch the thief
C. not be shown on TV D. tell the TV reporter

B

Dear Mary

I'm now living with the Clarks. I'm sending you some photos of the family and their house. First you will find a photo of their house. It's a very typical(典型的) English house. The English like houses better than flats.

You can also see some pictures of Mr and Mrs Clark, and their children, Sandy and Sue. They have all become very good friends of mine.

There are some pictures of the garden, too. Every English houses has a small garden. The English people work very hard in their gardens. Mr Clark has a lovely garden. He grows many flowers and vegetables. Everything is so green in the garden. Mr Clark doesn't have to water the garden every day because it rains so often here! When it rains, my English friends will say, "Nice weather for the ducks!" I'll write to you again soon.

Love,
Gretel

6. This is a letter from .
A. Mr Clark B. Mrs Clark
C. Sandy and Sue D. Gretel
7. Gretel is living now.
A. with her parents B. in her own country
C. with an English family D. at school
8. Gretel is .
A. getting on well with the Clarks
B. working hard in Clark's garden
C. taking some photos of the lovely garden
D. making friends with many English people
9. The English people .
A. like rain very much
B. prefer to live in flats
C. work hard in their gardens
D. like nice weather for the ducks
10. There in England.
A. is much rain B. is little rain
C. isn't enough water D. is much snow

- IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)
根据对话内容,判断正(T)误(F)。

Host: Welcome to 8 o'clock *Face to Face*. Tonight we are talking to Linda, a 14-year-old girl. Welcome to the show, Linda.

Linda: Thank you.

Host: Do you like to watch TV?

Linda: Yes, I like to watch TV very much.

Host: What do you think of soap operas?

Linda: Oh, I love them.

Host: Me, too. And how about sports shows?

Linda: I don't mind them.

Host: Really? And what do you think of sitcoms?

Linda: I don't like them.

Host: And talk shows?

Linda: That's great! I like them.

Host: And what do you think of game shows?

Linda: Oh, I can't stand them. They're so boring.

Host: OK! That was interesting. Thanks for joining us.

- Linda doesn't like to watch TV.
 - Linda likes soap operas very much.
 - Linda doesn't mind sitcoms.
 - Linda also likes talk shows.
 - Linda can't stand game shows.
- V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)
根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。
- All the people (赞同) with me in the meeting.
 - I can't (忍受) him.
 - The flags are (色彩鲜艳的).
 - Wash your dirty hands with the (肥皂).
 - He is a popular (主持人) of CCTV.
 - He says he is a doctor. In fact, he is a manager.
 - The basket is empty. There's nothing in it.
 - Would you mind closing the door?
 - It's a good idea.
 - I left my wallet at home, so I can't buy anything now.

- VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

- The man is thirty years old. (改为同义句)
He is a .
- What do you think of action movies? (改为同义句)
I like action movies?
- She showed me her photos. (改为同义句)
She her photos me.
- He likes the game show. (改为一般疑问句)
he the game show?
- He didn't have anything for two days. (改为同义句)
He for two days.

- VII. 翻译填空(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

- 我叔叔问了我一些关于我学习的事情。
My uncle me something my .
- 你同意她的观点吗?
Do you her?
- 我给每个孩子看了一些东西。
I some things.
- 她不能忍受这部令人厌烦的电影。
She can't this movie.
- 你认为她怎么样?
you her?

- VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

读下列表格信息,写一篇文章介绍 Wang Lin 和 Drew 对下列节目的看法和观点。60词左右。

	Animals World	Hope English	Chinese Cooking	Game Shows
Wang Lin	loves	likes	can't stand	likes
Drew	likes	doesn't mind	loves	doesn't mind

Unit 12

Don't eat in class. 不要在课堂上吃东西。

Language Goal: Talk about rules

语言目标: 谈论规则

英汉对照

Section A

A部分

1a Which rules^① are these students breaking? Write the number of the rule next to the student.
这些学生违反了哪些规则? 将规则的编号写在学生的旁边。

SCHOOL RULES 学校规则

1. Don't arrive late for class. 不准迟到。
2. Don't run in the **hallways**. 不准在走廊里跑。
3. Don't eat in the **classrooms**. 不准在教室里吃东西。
4. Don't listen to music in the classrooms or the hallways. 不准在教室里或走廊里听音乐。
5. Don't **fight**^②. 不准打架。

Don't run in the hallways.
不要在走廊里跑。



Sorry, Ms Clark.
对不起, 克拉克女士。

1b Listen. What rules are these students breaking? Write the numbers after the names.
听录音。这些学生违反了哪些规则? 在他们的名字后面写上编号。

Peter _____ Selina _____ Nick _____
彼得 塞琳娜 尼克

- **rule** [ru:l] *n.* 规则
- **hallway** ['hɔ:lwei] *n.* 走廊; 过道
- **classroom** ['klæsrom], ['kla:srom] *n.* 教室
- **fight** [fait] *v.* 打架; 争吵
- **Ms** [miz] *n.* 女士

本页生词

考点注释

Section A

① **rule** *n.* [C] 规则

► Every student should obey the school rules. 学校的规定必须遵守。

► It's against the rules of the school to smoke. 吸烟是违反校规的。

想一想, 你能说出多少关于 rule 的搭配, 请点击下框“归纳拓展”。

② **fight** *v.* 打架; 争吵

► Several men are fighting in the park. 几个男人在公园里打架。

► They are always fighting. 他们老是争吵不休。

fight hand to hand 短兵相接

fight one's way 艰苦奋斗, 奋力前进

fight for 为……而战

fight against 同……进行斗争

fight with 与……并肩战斗

fight 与 **quarrel** 有何区别? 请点击下框“图解辨析”。

参考答案

- 1a 1: boy looking at his watch
- 2: boy running in the hallway
- 3: girl eating an apple
- 4: boy with headphones
- 5: boys sitting at desks, fighting

非常点拨

归纳拓展

rule 的搭配

- as a rule 通常
- break/be against rules 违反规定
- by rule 按照规则
- make a rule 规定
- obey rules 遵守规章

图解

辨析 fight, quarrel



quarrel 吵架



fight 打架

1c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Student A is a new student. Student B tell Student A about the rules above.
学生 A 是一名新生。学生 B 给学生 A 讲述上面的有关规则。

A: What are the rules?
有什么规则呀?

B: Well, we can't arrive late for^③ class.
喔,我们上课不能迟到。

2a Listen. Check (✓) the activities Alex and Cindy talk about.

听录音。在亚历克斯和辛蒂谈论的活动前打✓。

Activity 活动		
1. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> listen to music in the classrooms or hallways 在教室里或走廊里听音乐	can 能	can't 不能
2. <input type="checkbox"/> eat in the classrooms 在教室里吃东西	can 能	can't 不能
3. <input type="checkbox"/> wear a hat 戴帽子	can 能	can't 不能
4. <input type="checkbox"/> listen to music outside ^④ 在外面听音乐	can 能	can't 不能
5. <input type="checkbox"/> fight 打架	can 能	can't 不能
6. <input type="checkbox"/> listen to music in the music room 在音乐教室里听音乐	can 能	can't 不能
7. <input type="checkbox"/> eat in the dining hall ^⑤ 在餐厅吃东西	can 能	can't 不能
8. <input type="checkbox"/> eat outside 在外面吃	can 能	can't 不能

2b Listen again. Can Alex and Cindy do these activities? Circle "can" or "can't" above.

再听一遍。亚历克斯和辛蒂可以做这些事情吗? 在上面的“能”或“不能”处画圈。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Student A is Alex, and Student B is Cindy. Talk about the rules at your school.
学生 A 是亚历克斯,学生 B 是辛蒂。谈论你们学校的规则。

A: Can we listen to music, Cindy?
我们能听音乐吗,辛蒂?

B: We can't listen to music in the hallways, but we can listen to it outside.
我们不能在走廊里听,但是我们可以在外面听。

- outside [aʊt'saɪd] *adv.* 外面的;在外部的
- dining ['daɪnɪŋ] *n.* 进餐;吃饭
- hall [hɔ:l] *n.* 大厅;礼堂

③ late for sth. 做某事迟到

- ▶ He arrived late for the party. 他赴宴迟到了。
- ▶ Don't be late for class again. 不要再上课迟到了。

拓展 late *adj.* 迟的,晚的;末期的,晚期的;最近的,新进的

▶ He was ten minutes late this morning
今天早上他迟到了 10 分钟。

▶ in the late 18th century 在 18 世纪末期

▶ This is the late CD of SHE. 这是 SHE 新近的 CD。

④ outside *adv./prep.* 外面;在外部

- ▶ It's so cold outside. 外面太冷了。
- ▶ He went outside to look at the garden.
他到外边去看花园了。

▶ He parked his car outside the school.
他把汽车停在学校外边。

拓展 outside *n./adj.* 外面(的),外部(的)

▶ The outside of the house was painted white.
房子的外面被漆成了白色。

▶ All the outside doors have locks. 所有的外门都装了锁。

联想 inside *adv./prep.* 里面;在里边

提示请点击下框“图解助记”,学习 outside 及其相关词。

⑤ hall *n.* [C] 大厅;礼堂

▶ Leave your coat in the hall. 把你的大衣放在门厅里。

▶ They are having a meeting in the hall.
他们正在大厅里开会。

▶ Leave your umbrella in the hall. 把雨伞放在门厅内。

联想 concert hall 音乐厅

dance hall 舞厅

dining hall 餐厅

参考答案

- 1b Peter: 2 Selina: 3 Nick: 4
- 2a 1 2 3 5 6 7

非常点拨

图解

助记 outside 及其相关词



真题回放

(2009·四川成都)

—Can you see some people are waiting _____ the library?
—Yes. They are standing in a queue in front of its gate.
A. around B. inside C. outside

【解析】C。题意:“你能看到有一些人正等在图书馆外面吗?”“是的。他们正排队站在图书馆门前的小广场上。”根据题意“站在门前”,故应该是在外面,用 outside。

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What are the rules at your school? 你们学校的规则是什么?	Don't run in the hallways and don't arrive late for class. 不许在走廊里跑, 不许迟到。
Can we eat in school? 我们能在学校里吃东西吗?	We can eat in the dining hall, but we can't eat in the classrooms. 我们可以在餐厅里吃东西, 但是不能在教室里吃。
Can you wear hats in school? 在学校里你们能戴帽子吗?	Yes, we can. / No, we can't. 是的, 可以戴。/ 不, 不能戴。
Do you have to wear a uniform at school? 你们在学校必须穿校服吗?	Yes, we do. / No, we don't. 是的, 必须穿。/ 不, 不必穿。
What else do you have to do? 你们还必须做什么?	We have to clean the classroom. 我们必须打扫教室。

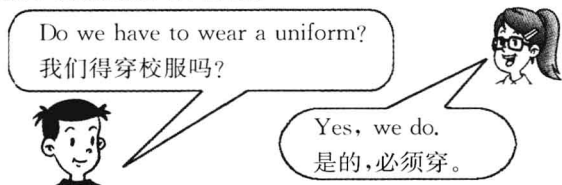
3a Fill in the blanks with the correct words in the box.
用方框中的正确单词填空。

uniform 校服 classroom 教室 sports shoes 运动鞋

- John, you have to wear sports shoes for gym class.
约翰, 你上体操课得穿运动鞋。
- At school, we have to clean the _____.
在学校里, 我们得打扫_____。
- Mary, you don't have to wear a _____.
玛丽, 你没有必要穿_____。

3b PAIRWORK 结对活动

Ask and answer questions about the rules at your school.
就学校规则提问并回答。



4 GAME 游戏 Make your own rules! 制定你自己的规则!

Make a list of six rules. Use "can" and "have to" in your list. Put your rules in a bag and take a different set of rules out. Now find the student who wrote these rules.
将你的规则放进包里, 然后拿出另一套规则。现在, 找出写这些规则的那个学生。

词汇绿卡

- 6 have to 不得不; 必须
- > We have to wear the school uniform. 我们不得不穿校服。
 - > He has to stay at home on Sundays. 周日他不得不呆在家里。

Can students eat in the hallway?
学生能在走廊里吃东西吗?



Yes, they can.
是的, 可以。

Section B

B部分

1 Read the rules in the chart below. Then match the pictures with the rules.
看下面图表中的规则。然后将图片[a-d]与规则联系起来。



Rules	Emily	Dave
Don't watch TV after school.	✓	
Don't go out on school nights.		
Do your homework after school.		
Practice your guitar every day.		

参考答案

- 2b Can; 6. listen to music in the music room
7. eat in the dining hall
Can't: 1. listen to music in the hallways
2. eat in the classrooms
3. wear a hat 5. fight
- 3a 1. sports shoes 2. classroom 3. uniform
- 3b 1. A: Do we have to clean the classroom?
B: Yes, we do.
2. A: Do we have to wear sports shoes for gym class?
B: Yes, we do.
3. A: Do we have to eat in the dining hall?
B: No, we don't.

- have to 不得不; 必须
- else [els] adj 其他的; 别的; 另外的 adv 其他; 另外
- sports shoes 运动鞋
- gym [dʒɪm] n. (=gymnasium) 体育馆

非常点拨

词汇绿卡

- 7 else adj. 其他的; 别的; 另外的 (常附在疑问代词、不定代词后) adv. 其他; 另外 (常附在疑问副词后)
- > What else would you like? 您还想要别的吗?
 - > Is anyone else coming to the party? 还有其他人来参加这个晚会吗?

2a Listen and number the rules above [1-4] in the order you hear them.

听录音并且按照你听见的顺序将上面的规则编号[1-4]。

2b Listen again. What rules do Dave and Emily have? Put checks (✓) under

再听一遍。戴维和埃米莉有什么规则? 在上面的“Emily”或

“Emily” or “Dave” above.

“Dave”下打✓。

2c PAIRWORK 结对活动

Talk about the rules in your house.

谈论你的家庭规则。



I have to do my homework after school. And I...
我放学后得做家庭作业。 并且我……

3a Read the letter and write the list of rules in Zhao Pei's house.

阅读信件,然后列一张赵培家的家庭规则清单。

Dear Dr Know,

亲爱的通晓博士:

I'm not happy. I have too many rules in my house. I have to get up
我不开心。我家里的规则太多了。 我每天早晨得六
at six o'clock every morning. I can't meet my friends after school because
点钟起床。 放学后我不能与朋友相聚,因为我得做家庭
I have to do my homework. I can't watch TV on school nights. And I have
作业。 上学时晚上不能看电视。 十点钟我一
to be in bed **by**^① ten o'clock. On weekends, I have to clean my room and
定得上床。 周末时,我得打扫房间,洗衣服。

wash^② my clothes. Then I have to **help my mom make**^③ dinner. Later I
然后我还要帮妈妈做饭。 饭后我

have to go to **the Children's Palace** to learn the piano. I never have any fun.
还得去少年宫学钢琴。 我从来没有有什么乐趣。

What can I do?

我该怎么办?

Zhao Pei

赵培

Rules 规则

1. get up at 6 o'clock 6点起床 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

- Dr ['dɑ:kɪtər], ['dɒktə] *abbr.* (=doctor) 医生
- **by** [baɪ] *prep.* 到(某时)之前;不迟于
- **wash** [wɑ:ʃ], [wɒʃ] *v.* 洗;洗涤 • later ['leɪtə(r)] *adv.* 后来;以后
- the Children's Palace 少年宫



Section B

① by *prep.* 到(某时)之前;不迟于

> You must be back by ten o'clock at night. 你必须在夜里十点前回来。

> I have to finish my homework by seven o'clock. 我必须七点前写完作业。

拓展 till/until *prep.* 直至,直到……为止

提示 请点击下框“妙辨异同”和“图解辨异”,学习 by 与 till/until 的区别。

② wash *v.* 洗;洗涤

> Wash your hands before dinner. 吃晚饭前洗洗你的手。

> He likes to wash in cold water. 他喜欢用冷水洗澡。

拓展 wash up 洗(餐具);洗手洗脸

③ help sb. (to) do sth. 帮着做某事,有助于做某事。其中 to 可带可不带。

> She helped me (to) carry the box. 她帮我提箱子。

> Jenny helped Carl (to) plan his trip. 詹妮帮卡尔规划他的旅游行程。

拓展 help sb. with sth. 帮助某人做某事。

> The Englishman helps me with my English. 这位英国人帮我学英语。

参考答案

- 2a 4 1 2 3
- 2b Dave's rules: Don't watch TV after school.
Do his homework after school.
Practice his guitar every day.
Emily's rules: Don't watch TV after school.
Don't go out on school nights.
Do her homework after school.
- 3a 1. get up at six o'clock
2. can't meet her friends after school
3. has to do her homework after school
4. can't watch TV on school nights
5. has to be in bed by ten o'clock
6. has to clean her room and wash her clothes on weekends
7. has to help her mom make dinner
8. has to learn the piano

非常点拨

妙辨异同 by, till/until (在……之前)

by 表示一个瞬间动作发生在某一时间点或在某一时间点之前。

till/until 表示一种持续的行动或状态一直持续到某一时间。

I'll be here by noon. 我会在中午之前到这里。

I'll be here till noon. 我会在这里呆到中午。

图解

辨异 by, till/until



till 在……以前一直……(继续)



by 在……以前,……(完成了)

3b Write the rules for the school library.

写出学校图书馆的规则。



Library Rules 图书馆规则

1. No talking! 不准谈话! 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____
5. _____

3c Now, write about the rules in your house.

现在, 写出你的家庭规则。

4 GAME 游戏 Class survey. 班级调查。

Make a list of the rules at your house. Ask other students if they have the same rules. 列一张你的家庭规则表。问其他同学他们是否有同样的规则。

Maria, do you have to go to bed by 10:00?
玛丽亚, 你 10 前点一定得上床吗?



Yes, I do.
是的。

Self Check

自我检测

1 Key word check. Check (✓) the words you know.

关键词检测。在你认识的单词前打✓。

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> classroom 教室 | <input type="checkbox"/> hallway 走廊 | <input type="checkbox"/> arrive 到达 | <input type="checkbox"/> late 迟到 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> outside 外面 | <input type="checkbox"/> uniform 校服 | <input type="checkbox"/> sports shoes 运动鞋 | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> go out 出去 | <input type="checkbox"/> practice 练习 | <input type="checkbox"/> can 能 | <input type="checkbox"/> can't 不能 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> have to 不得不 | <input type="checkbox"/> listen 听 | | |

2 Write some new words in your notebook.

在你的笔记本中写几个新单词。

3 List the rules of the Jones family. Then imagine you are a child in the Jones family.

列出琼斯家的规则。然后设想你是琼斯家的孩子。

Write a letter to Dr Know about the rules in your house.

写信把你家的规则告诉通晓博士。

FAMILY RULES

家庭规则

1. Don't talk loudly at home.
不要在家里大声交谈。
2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____

- no talking 不许讲话 • loudly ['laʊdli] adv. 大声地



4 "No talking! 不许讲话!" no 加上名词或 v-ing 可以构成表示禁止的警示语。

- ▶ No smoking! 禁止吸烟!
- ▶ No speaking! 不准讲话!
- ▶ No parking! 不准停车!

参考答案

- 3b 1. No talking!
2. No school bags!
3. No food!
4. No wet umbrellas!
5. No listening to music!
- 3c 1. Get up at 6 o'clock.
2. Do morning exercise.
3. Have breakfast at 7 o'clock.
4. Turn down the television.
5. Watch TV only on weekends.
6. Go out for a walk after dinner.
7. Do homework from 7 till 10 at night.
8. Go to bed before 11 o'clock.

Self Check

1 loudly adv. 大声地

- ▶ The dog is barking loudly outside. 狗在外面大声吠叫。
- ▶ Don't sing loudly at night. 夜晚不要大声唱歌。

loudly, aloud 和 loud 都是副词且词形相近, 那么三者有何区别呢? 请点击下框“妙辨异同”。

参考答案

- 3 1. Don't talk loudly on the phone.
2. Don't watch TV late at night.
3. Don't eat on the bed.
4. Clean your bedroom on Saturday.
5. Don't sleep too late.
6. Don't play guitar late at night.



非常点拨

妙辨异同 loudly, aloud, loud

- aloud 重点在于“出声”(能被人听见, 但声音不一定很大), 通常与 read, think 连用。
- loudly 还含有“喧闹”的意味, 与 quietly 相对。
- loud 指声音的音量大。

真题回放

(2008 · 山东青岛)

- Speak _____, please, because I can't hear a word from the back.
—Well, it's _____ enough.
A. loudly; loudly B. louder; loud
C. loud; louder D. loud; too loud
【解析】B。题意: “请大声说, 因为我从后面一个词也听不到。” “已经够大声了。”



语法在线

祈使句

祈使句是用来表示请求、命令、劝告或建议的句子。祈使句的主语一般为第二人称 you, 但通常省略, 祈使句的句末通常用句点。为了加强语气, 也可以用感叹号。在表示客气的请求时, 常在句首或句末加上 please。please 用在句末, 前面加逗号。祈使句中如果有称呼语, 要用逗号隔开, 放在句首或句末。

1. 祈使句的构成方式:

基本构成方式: 动词原形+其他成分。

- ▶ Be quiet, please. 请安静。
- ▶ Please peel three bananas for me. 请给我剥三个香蕉。

2. 祈使句的否定形式: 在动词原形前加 don't.

- ▶ Don't look out of the window. 别看窗外。
- ▶ Don't speak to others with your mouth full. 嘴里含着东西的时候不要和别人讲话。

3. 祈使句变反意疑问句时, 肯定句用 will you/won't you? 否定句用 will you?

Let's... 句型用 shall we? Let us 句型用 will you?

- ▶ Don't smoke here, will you? 不要在这吸烟, 好吗?
- ▶ Let's go to the park, shall we? 让我们去公园, 好吗?

4. 含有第一、第三人称主语的祈使句, 其肯定形式为: Let + sb. + 动词原形 +

……; 其否定形式为: Let + sb. + not + 动词原形 + …… 或 Don't let + sb. + 动词原形 + ……。

- ▶ Let us have a try. 让我们试一试。
- ▶ Don't let them play with fire. 别让他们玩火。

情态动词 can 表示许可的用法

1. can 作情态动词, 可以用来表示许可。否定形式在 can 后加 not.

- ▶ I can play football after school. 我放学后 can 踢足球。
- ▶ You can't be late for class. 你上课不能迟到。

2. can 的疑问句肯定回答用 Yes, ... can. 是的/可以。否定回答用 No, ... can't. 不行/不可以。

- ▶ —Can I watch TV for a while, Mum? 妈妈, 我可以看一会儿电视吗?
—No, you can't. 不, 你不能看。
- ▶ —Can I use your cell phone for a while? 我可以用一会儿你的手机吗?
—Yes, of course you can. 好的, 当然可以。

拓展 在语气上, could 比 can 更加客气, 更委婉。这种用法常见于陈述句和疑问句中。

- ▶ Could you make some room for me, please? 你能否为我腾出一点地方来?
- ▶ —Could I smoke here? 我可以在这吸烟吗?
—No, you can't. 不可以。
- ▶ Could't you try it again? 你可否再试一下?



点击名题

1. — late for school next time.

—Sorry, I won't.

- A. Don't be B. Don't C. Be

【解析】 题意: “下一次上课不要迟到了。” “很抱歉, 我不会了。” 无主语的祈使句通常句首用动词原形, 其否定形式是在动词原形前面加 don't。be late for “做……迟到”, 为固定词组。

【答案】 A

2. Don't forget to put the book back to the shelf, _____?

- A. do you B. don't you
C. will you D. won't you

【解析】 题意: 不要忘了把书放回架子上, 好吧? 否定祈使句的反意疑问句, 附加问句部分用 will you。

【答案】 C

3. Just _____ here and don't go around.

- A. to stay B. stayed
C. stay D. staying

【解析】 题意: 待在这里不要四处走动。空格前没有主语, 只有修饰动词的副词, 通过句意表现出说话者的命令口吻, 故判断这是一个祈使句, 要用动词原形。故选 C。

【答案】 C

4. —Must I return the book tomorrow morning?

—No, you _____ . You _____ keep it for three days.

- A. mustn't; may B. mustn't; must
C. needn't; can D. needn't; must

【解析】 题意: “我必须明天早上还书吗?” “不, 不需要。你可以借三天。” 本题考查情态动词。用 must 提问“是否必须”, 否定回答用 needn't。第二个空表示许可, 意为“可以”, may 和 can 都可以, 根据题意, 选 C。

【答案】 C

5. —Could I have a look at the photo of your family, Sam?

—Of course you _____ .

- A. may B. can
C. could D. would

【解析】 题意: “萨姆, 我可以看一下你的全家福吗?” “当然可以。” 本题考查情态动词。用 could 进行委婉的提问, 回答应该用 can。

【答案】 B

非常点拨

巧学助记

祈使句“四说”

动词原形、无主语, 婉言用“请”、“让”字句; 牢牢记住这四点, 定能学好祈使句。

- ▶ Don't read! 别读了! (无主语)
- ▶ Give me an apple, please. = Please give me an apple. 请给我一个苹果。(婉言用“请”)
- ▶ Let's (not) sit here! 我们(别)坐这儿吧! (“让”字句)

真题回放

(2008·安徽芜湖)

_____ this kind of peach, and you will like it.

- A. To try B. Trying C. Try D. Tried

【解析】 C。题意: 试一下这种桃子, 你会喜欢的。“祈使句+and+简单句”为固定句型, 祈使句中要用动词原形, 故选 C 项。

单元同步测试

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- Don't smoke here!
—_____.
A. Excuse me B. I'm sorry C. Hello D. Really
- Mom asked me to _____ my room after lunch.
A. wash B. clean C. visit D. go
- I have to get up _____ six _____ the morning.
A. at; on B. on; in C. at; in D. on; on
- Don't be late _____ class.
A. on B. for C. at D. before
- It's raining, so I _____ stay inside.
A. don't B. can't C. have to D. has to
- Mother told me _____ too many cakes.
A. don't eat B. not eat
C. not eating D. not to eat
- It's sunny today.
—Let's play football _____.
A. outside B. back C. later D. away
- I will meet my friends at the school gate _____ school.
A. behind B. before
C. after D. in front of
- _____ means that you can't talk there.
A. NO TALKING B. NO PHOTOS
C. NO FOOD D. NO SMOKING
- I often help my sister _____ the clothes.
A. wash B. teach C. close D. mind
- Can you watch TV after school?
—_____. I have to study for tests.
A. Yes, I can B. No, I can't
C. Sorry, I don't D. Sure, I can
- I'd like to _____ music in class.
A. listen B. look C. listen to D. hear
- Don't talk _____ in the library.
A. slow B. loudly C. fast D. lowly
- Don't _____ in the street.
A. run B. runs C. running D. to run
- He can play _____ piano well.
A. a B. the C. an D. /

II. 完形填空(共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)

通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Dear Dale,

Thank you for your letter. Do you want to know about my life here? I am not very happy. I have a lot of 1 in school and at home. For school rules, I 2 wear my uniform. I can't be late for class. I can't 3 in the classroom. I can't run in the hallways, either. And teachers tell us not to 4 with others. For home rules, my parents are very 5 with me. I can't get up late. I can play computer games only 6 thirty minutes every day. I can't 7 weekends outside with my friends. I have to clean

my bedroom every 8. When it is time to go to bed, I have to stop 9 TV. Sometimes I can't 10 them. What can I do?

Write to me soon.

Best wishes,
Dave

- A. rooms B. books C. rules D. classes
- A. have to B. can't C. can D. don't
- A. read B. write C. sit D. eat
- A. speak B. fight C. talk D. study
- A. strict B. glad C. friendly D. sad
- A. with B. in C. at D. for
- A. stay B. pay C. spend D. take
- A. year B. day C. spend D. take
- A. buying B. watching C. to watch D. to buy
- A. stand B. decide C. put D. see

III. 阅读理解(共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)

从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

Mr Black is the manager(经理) of a company. He often has meetings with other businessmen in the meeting room. He does not smoke, but some people smoke when they are having a meeting. Mr Black is not happy about it.



One day, there was a meeting in the meeting room. And some people were smoking. The air was too smoky and Mr Black coughed(咳嗽) a lot. So he called his secretary(秘书) and said, "How can we keep the air of the meeting room clean? Can you solve(解决) the problem?"

"Yes, Sir," she answered.

The next day, a sign was on the wall. It said, "No smoking!"

- Mr Black is _____.
A. a worker B. a teacher
C. a secretary D. a manager
- Mr Black often has meetings with other businessmen _____.
A. in the meeting room B. in the dining hall
C. in the bedroom D. in the classroom
- When they were having a meeting, _____ often smoked.
A. Mr Black B. the secretary
C. other businessmen D. one of the businessmen
- The next day a sign "_____" was on the wall.
A. No photos! B. No walking!
C. No smoking! D. No talking!
- Which sentence is RIGHT?
A. Mr Black often smokes.
B. When other businessmen were smoking in the meeting room, Mr Black wasn't happy.
C. One day, some people were smoking in the meeting

room, but the air was clean.

D. The secretary put a sign on the door.

B

Rule One

1. You can come into the room only with your teacher.
2. Don't eat or drink in the room.
3. Don't listen to music.
4. Be quiet. Don't talk to each other.
5. Turn off all the computers and close windows after class.

Rule Two

Here are the rules for Emily.

1. You must get up before 6:30 am.
2. Don't listen to music.
3. Don't talk loudly on the phone.
4. Go to bed by 10:00 pm.
5. You can't meet friends if you don't finish your homework.
6. Clean your bedroom yourself.

6. In the two rules, _____ isn't allowed.
 - A. eating or drinking
 - B. closing windows after class
 - C. meeting friends
 - D. coming into the room
7. When does Emily have to go to bed?
 - A. After 10:00 pm.
 - B. Before 6:30 pm.
 - C. By 10:00 pm.
 - D. By 9:00 pm.
8. Rule One may be for a _____.
 - A. computer room
 - B. classroom
 - C. bedroom
 - D. dining room
9. The underlined word "finish" means _____ in Chinese.
 - A. 阅读
 - B. 拿走
 - C. 开始
 - D. 完成
10. Which of the following is NOT true?
 - A. You have to be quiet when you have a computer class.
 - B. Emily's parents clean her bedroom.
 - C. Students can't go into the room if there is no teacher.
 - D. Rule Two is a family rule.

IV. 任务型阅读(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据短文内容简要回答问题。

This morning I went to the cinema to see a good film. I had a very good seat. The film was very interesting, but I didn't enjoy it. A young man and a young woman sat behind me. They talked loudly. I was very angry. I couldn't hear anything. I turned round and looked at them angrily. They didn't mind. In the end I turned round and said angrily, "I can't hear a word." "It's none of your business." The young man said, "We talk to each other."

注:在做题时,把文中的"I"看做是男的。

1. Where did the writer go this morning?

2. Did the writer enjoy the film?

3. Who sat behind the writer?

4. Could the writer hear the film?

5. What did the young man and the young woman do?

V. 单词拼写(共 10 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 10 分)

根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. What _____ (其他的) do you like?
2. Don't run in the _____ (大厅).
3. I have to _____ (洗) my clothes on the weekend.
4. I had a _____ (争吵) with Bob yesterday.
5. Don't talk l _____ in the museum.
6. We must obey(遵守) school r _____.
7. The students are having an English class in the c _____.
8. The room is small. Let's go o _____.
9. Two days l _____, he went back to school.
10. I have to wear sports shoes for g _____ class.

VI. 句型转换(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. They can eat in the restaurant. (对划线部分提问)
_____ they eat?
2. Zhao Pei often helps her brother with his homework. (改为同义句)
Zhao Pei often _____ her brother _____ his homework.
3. We can see "No Talking!" in the reading room. (改为同义句)
We _____ in the reading room.
4. We have to have lunch at school. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ you _____ have lunch at school?
5. Play the piano every day. (改为否定句)
_____ the piano every day.

VII. 翻译填空(共 5 小题;每小题 2 分,满分 10 分)

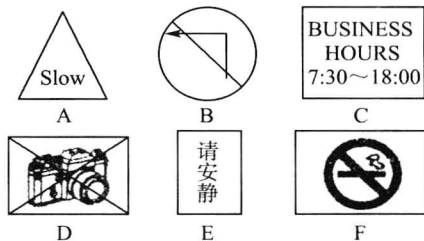
根据汉语提示补全英语句子。

1. 他不能和我一起去看游泳。
He _____ go swimming _____ me.
2. 你认为那条规定怎么样?
_____ do you _____ of that _____?
3. 禁止在教室里大声喧哗。
_____ in the classroom.
4. 我可以帮你学习英语。
I can _____ you _____ your homework.
5. 他还有其他想说的吗?
What _____ he want to say?

VIII. 书面表达(满分 15 分)

看图,根据图示及提示语写一篇介绍下列图示的日常规则的文章,60 词左右。

提示词语: signs, drive, mustn't, turn left, open, museum, photos, keep quiet, be pleased



期末测试题

▶▶ 满分 100 分, 限时 90 分钟, 得分 _____ ◀◀

I. 单项选择 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)
从每小题 A、B、C、D 中选出一个能填入句中空白处的最佳答案。

- We enjoy _____ storybooks over the weekend.
A. read B. reads C. to read D. reading
- Class is over. The students stop _____.
A. to have a rest B. have a rest
C. having a rest D. had a rest
- My sister likes playing _____ basketball and she also loves playing _____ guitar.
A. a; a B. /; the C. the; / D. the; the
- Mary is kind of _____. She doesn't talk much.
A. dirty B. clever C. ugly D. shy
- He likes the movie, _____ it is interesting.
A. so B. but C. or D. because
- My father is a teacher. He _____ us English.
A. studies B. likes C. teaches D. passes
- Don't go out at night. It's _____.
A. surprised B. unfriendly
C. terrible D. dangerous
- It is very difficult _____ English well in a month.
A. learn B. learns C. to learn D. learned
- Why didn't you do your homework? Tell me the _____.
A. special B. reason C. idea D. rule
- Would you like to help me with my homework?
—_____.
A. Yes, I'd love to B. Yes, I'd love
C. No, I wouldn't to D. No, I'd love to
- Xu Qian loves to tell jokes and she _____ stops talking.
A. always B. often
C. never D. sometimes
- Where is Kate from?
—She _____ Shanghai.
A. was from B. come from
C. comes from D. from
- Animals are _____ interesting.
A. kind of B. kinds of
C. a kind of D. kind
- Yesterday morning, I _____ with my mother.
A. go shopping B. went shopping
C. went to shopping D. go to shopping
- Hello, Linda.
—I'm sorry. I can't _____ your name.
A. discuss B. practice
C. remember D. describe

II. 完形填空 (共 10 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 10 分)
通读下面短文, 掌握其大意, 然后从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择最佳的一项。

Dear Betty,
1 _____ are you these days? What are you 2 _____ now?
3 _____ is the weather there? It is very hot here. The long
4 _____ vacation is coming. I 5 _____ to Beijing on vacation
last year. But I have to 6 _____ at home this summer. I have

too many things to do this summer. I have to 7 _____ up at six in the morning. After 8 _____, I have to go to my English lessons by bus. In the afternoon, I have to 9 _____ the piano. Can I 10 _____ TV in the evening? No, I can't. I have to do my homework.

- A. How B. What C. Why D. When
- A. do B. doing C. did D. does
- A. How B. what C. where D. who
- A. winter B. summer C. spring D. autumn
- A. going B. go C. went D. goes
- A. stay B. go C. come D. coming
- A. got B. get C. getting D. geting
- A. breakfast B. lunch
C. dinner D. evening
- A. buy B. playing C. practice D. learning
- A. watching B. watch
C. watched D. watches

III. 阅读理解 (共 10 小题; 每小题 2 分, 满分 20 分)
从短文后各题所给的四个选项中选择正确的一项。

A

Tom doesn't like to use his head, so he can't be good at his lessons. His teacher tells Mr Green about it.

It was Sunday yesterday. Mr Green didn't go to work. After lunch he began to talk with his son.

"You are nine years old now," said Mr Green. "When I was nine, I listened to the teacher carefully in class and did all my teacher's homework at home. So I could answer all my teacher's questions. I was good at all my lessons. And Miss Young, our English teacher liked me very much. I was her pet."

"Your teacher was poor, I think," said Tom.

"How do you know about it?"

"She couldn't afford (买得起) a dog."

- _____, so his father is worried about it.
A. Tom is often late
B. Tom isn't good at his lessons
C. Tom is only nine
D. The teachers don't like Tom
- Mr Green talked with Tom _____.
A. this afternoon B. this morning
C. yesterday afternoon D. yesterday morning
- Mr Green said _____.
A. Tom was young
B. Tom was a bad boy
C. Tom couldn't answer any questions in class
D. he was a good student when he was young
- Tom thought _____.
A. Miss Young likes all her students
B. Miss Young was poor
C. his father was poor
D. his father's teachers were poor
- Which of the following is RIGHT?
A. Mr Green isn't worried about his son now.
B. Tom is going to listen to his father.

- C. Tom thought his father was like a dog.
D. Tom is going to study hard.

B

All students need to have good study habits(习惯). When you have good study habits, you can learn things quickly. You can also remember them easily.

Do you like to study in the living-room? This is not a good place for studying because it is usually noisy. You need to study in a quiet place, like your bedroom. A quiet place will help you only think about one thing, and you will learn better.

Before you begin to study, do not forget to clean your desk. A good desk light is important, too. You'll feel tired easily if there is not enough light.

6. When you have good study habits, you will _____.
- A. learn things quickly
B. remember things easily
C. think about one thing
D. Both A and B
7. The living-room isn't a good place for study because it is too _____.
- A. quiet B. noisy C. clean D. warm
8. You'll feel tired easily if the light is _____.
- A. good B. enough C. bad D. fantastic
9. You should remember to _____ before you study.
- A. clean the desk B. clean the room
C. turn on the light D. open the door
10. The best title(标题) for this passage is _____.
- A. Study in the Bedroom
B. How to Study
C. Good Study Habits
D. Bedroom

IV. 任务型阅读(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)
根据短文内容,判断下列句子正(T)误(F)。

What a fine day! The sun is shining and everything looks bright. Can you feel the heat when you stand in the sun? The sun gives the heat from very far away. It's hard to believe that the sun is about one hundred and fifty million kilometres away. The sun looks small because it is so far from us, but it's really very huge.

The earth circles the sun. It takes one year for the earth to go around the sun. And at the same time the earth itself is spinning(自转) around once every twenty-four hours.

The sun gives us light. It keeps us warm. It makes things grow. Plants, animals and people need the sun. We can't live without the sun.

1. On a fine day everything is bright because the sun is shining.
2. The sun gives us heat and light.
3. It's about 150 000 000 kilometres from the earth to the sun.
4. In fact, the sun isn't very big.
5. It takes the earth 24 hours to go around the sun.

V. 单词拼写(共10小题;每小题1分,满分10分)
根据汉语意思或首字母提示补全单词。

1. He is a good _____ (向导).
2. I _____ (步行) to school every morning.
3. In _____ (事实), I don't want to be an actor.
4. I have a good _____ (主意).
5. There are some _____ (规则) in my school.
6. Dumplings are d _____. I love them.
7. They have to wear u _____ to work.

8. Don't be l _____ again.
9. Be q _____ in the library.
10. —How's the w _____?
—It's raining.

VI. 句型转换(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)
根据要求完成句子,每空一词。

1. Jane loves her earrings very much. (对划线部分提问)
_____ Jane _____ her earrings?
2. Grace is tall and thin. (对划线部分提问)
_____ Grace _____ like?
3. How is the weather there? (改为同义句)
_____ is the weather _____ there?
4. Is there a hospital here? (做肯定回答)
Yes, _____.
5. I like koalas because they are cute. (对划线部分提问)
_____ you like koalas?

VII. 补全对话(共5小题;每小题2分,满分10分)

从方框中选择最恰当的选项完成下列对话,并将答案写在相应的横线上,方框中有两个选项是多余的。

- A. No, you can't.
B. You're welcome.
C. Yes, I do.
D. Can I eat in our classroom?
E. You can't arrive late for school.
F. Nice to meet you, too.
G. I'd love to.

A: Hi! Nice to meet you!

B: Hi! I _____

A: May I ask you some questions?

B: Certainly.

A: I get up early every morning and I have to eat in the school. _____ 2 _____

B: No, you can't. But you can eat in the dining hall.

A: I know. Can I wear a hat when I am in the classroom?

B: _____ 3 _____ And you have to wear your uniform in the school.

A: What other rules in the school?

B: _____ 4 _____

A: Anything else?

B: You can't listen to music in the classroom.

A: Thank you very much.

B: _____ 5 _____

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____

VIII. 书面表达(满分15分)

根据下面的提示,写一篇60词左右小短文来介绍一下你的朋友。

提示:你的朋友 Tom 现在住在中国北京,他喜欢中国人和中国食物。他早餐吃一碗面条和两个鸡蛋;午餐吃水饺;晚餐吃米饭、肉和蔬菜。他喜欢情景喜剧,但忍受不了连续剧。

《互动新课堂·人教七年级下》

欢迎您购买使用星火英语图书,从图书上市的第一天起,我们就一直期待您的声音。欢迎您给我们的图书提出宝贵意见,快快发邮件、打电话、写信或在论坛上留言告诉我们吧。

会员档案

姓名: _____

学校班级: _____

地址: _____

邮编: _____

电话: _____

E-MAIL: _____

我的英语老师: _____

电话: _____

您的格言: _____

购书评价

1. 我是怎样获得本书的?

- 普通书店购买 新华书店购买 网上书店购买 老师或学校团购
 其他

2. 我是通过何种渠道最早了解本书的?

- 逛书店 老师或同学推荐 其他同学在使用 店内海报/招贴宣传
 促销活动 店员推荐 网络 其他

3. 我愿意向别人推荐本书吗?

- 非常愿意 没考虑过 不值得推荐

4. 我购买本书的原因是?

- 品牌 内容质量 价格适中 封面设计
 印装质量 促销活动 增值服务

5. 我对本书的整体评价?

- 内容质量 很好 较好 一般 较差 很差
 封面设计 出色 普通 毫不起眼
 版式设计 有利于阅读 一般 较差
 印装质量 好 一般 较差

赞美几句

这本书的优点是:

(☺) 我们也需要鼓励哟!

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

提点意见

这本书存在的不足是:

(☺) 我们很虚心的!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

献计献策

您对这本书的改进建议是:

(☺) 别太吝啬哦!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

推荐好书

同类辅导书中,您感觉比较好的是《 _____ 》
您推荐的理由是:

(☺) 萝卜青菜,各有所爱!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

提点要求

您心目中最完美的辅导书应该是这样的:

(☺) 你的地盘,你做主吧!

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

1. 电子邮箱: spark_dz@126.com
2. 电 话: 0531-55582340
3. 网 站: www.sparke.cn
4. QQ: 1045206468
6. 写 信: 山东省济南市高新技术开发区舜华路2000号舜泰广场8号楼15层
星火初中读者服务部(收)
7. 邮 编: 250101



☺ 每月我们会从读者寄来的反馈表中抽取200名幸运读者,幸运读者将得到新课标英汉对照名著分级读物《春天系列》中的精品图书一本。如果您提的建议被我们采纳,我们将会在读者的信息库中为您建档,购买星火图书享受优惠。

互动新课堂系列

- 互动新课堂 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (人教新目标·九年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (外研版·初一上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (外研版·初二上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (外研版·初三上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (冀教起始版·七年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (冀教起始版·八年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (冀教起始版·九年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (牛津译林·七年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (牛津译林·八年级上、下)
- 互动新课堂 (牛津译林·九年级上、下)

速查速记速学系列

- 新课标教材速查速记速学 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 新课标教材速查速记速学 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 新课标教材速查速记速学 (人教新目标·九年级)

同步词汇随身记系列

- 同步词汇随身记 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 同步词汇随身记 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 同步词汇随身记 (人教新目标·九年级)
- 同步词汇随身记 (外研版·初一上、下)
- 同步词汇随身记 (外研版·初二上、下)
- 同步词汇随身记 (外研版·初三上、下)

同步词汇串串记系列

- 同步词汇串串记 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 同步词汇串串记 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 同步词汇串串记 (人教新目标·九年级)

全线突破—创新导 & 练系列

- 全线突破—创新导 & 练 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 全线突破—创新导 & 练 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 全线突破—创新导 & 练 (人教新目标·九年级上、下)
- 全线突破—创新导 & 练 (外研版·初一上、下)
- 全线突破—创新导 & 练 (外研版·初二上、下)
- 全线突破—创新导 & 练 (外研版·初三上、下)

词汇系列

- 初中生英语必备
- 星火英语最新中考必备
- 最新中考词汇必备
- 抗遗忘程序速记掌中宝中考英语 2000 词
- 中考英语词汇规范释析

初中英语真正同步系列

- 同步听力 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 同步听力 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 同步听力 (人教新目标·九年级)
- 同步阅读理解与完形填空 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 同步阅读理解与完形填空 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 同步阅读理解与完形填空 (人教新目标·九年级)
- 同步语法 (人教新目标·七年级上、下)
- 同步语法 (人教新目标·八年级上、下)
- 同步语法 (人教新目标·九年级)

中考专项突破系列

- 中考专项突破—听力理解
- 中考专项突破—单项选择
- 中考专项突破—完形填空与综合填空
- 中考专项突破—阅读理解
- 中考专项突破—书面表达
- 中考专项突破—阅卷老师点评英语作文

第一教材系列

- 听力第一教材 (七年级)
- 听力第一教材 (八年级)
- 听力第一教材 (中考)
- 阅读第一教材 (七年级)
- 阅读第一教材 (八年级)
- 阅读第一教材 (中考)

周计划系列

- 听力周计划 (七年级上、下)
- 听力周计划 (八年级上、下)
- 听力周计划 (中考)
- 阅读周计划 (七年级上、下)
- 阅读周计划 (八年级上、下)
- 阅读周计划 (中考)

语法系列

- 星火英语语法 (初中版)
- 语法精解 (初中版)
- 语法全解 (初中版)
- 巧学活用语法 (初中版)
- 语法全练 (初中版)
- 图解英语语法 (初中版)
- 动漫英语语法 (初中版)
- 张道真初中英语语法

英语学习

Spark English

全面解决方案

我们对每单元课文都做了准确、贴切、地道的逐句翻译，英汉完全对照，完全可以满足自学的需要。

我们对课文中的重点、难点、考点、疑点都做了专门的标注和精讲，帮您理出主线，抓住重点，学深学透。

我们每单元讲解后，都设计了精当、科学的测试练习，帮您及时理解、消化、巩固本单元知识点，让您举一反三，轻松应试。

我课本学得会，但不知道哪些是重点，哪些是考点，不知道怎么深入学习？

我英语基础不好，老师讲课跟不上，课下复习很吃力，怎么办？

感觉课本掌握得还行，但一做题、一考试还是不会，怎么办？



我的问题

我写作、口语不好，平时训练机会又少，怎么办？

我们学习中碰到问题，有时老师不在身边，怎么办？

我学有余力，感觉老师讲课太单调，怎么才能学到更多东西，学得活呢？

我们在讲解课文、提高您阅读能力的同时，对一些好的、常用的句型、句式进行了归纳、精析，同步提高您的说写能力。

我们每单元特设“非常点拨”，对课本相关知识进行启迪拓展、个性点拨，帮您开阔视野，举一反三，快乐学习，自主提高。

我们开通了星火英语互动教学网站，您有什么问题可以来网上向我们的在线名师咨询或与其他读者交流。



- 课时达标卷及答案
- 单元同步测试答案

互动
网站

<http://www.sparke.cn>

免费下载学习资源



14.80元

ISBN 978-7-5308-4808-1



9 787530 848081 >

定价: 43.40元(全套三册)

责任编辑 杨庆华

封面设计 星火视觉设计中心

9BTHR4